

NEW MANUAL
OF
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

REVISED EDITION

LONDON
THE CHRISTIAN LITERATURE SOCIETY,
35, JOHN STREET, BEDFORD ROW, W.C.
1911

All Rights Reserved

PREFACE.

This volume is a revision of the NEW MANUAL OF GRAMMAR, which for the last twenty-five years has enjoyed such popularity in Indian Schools that annual editions of 40,000 copies have been called for. The book has now been revised, and partly re-written, in the light of the best and most recent School Grammars both English and American, and it is hoped that in its present form it will be still more popular and useful.

Care has been taken to avoid loading the pages with non-essential matter. No book is more easily enlarged than an English Grammar, and none, perhaps, offers, in this respect, such temptation to the compiler. To have yielded to the temptation, however, would have been to defeat the purpose for which this Manual is intended. It is not a class-book for University or High School students, but for those of the Upper Middle School. An effort has, therefore, been made throughout to attain the utmost conciseness consistent with clearness and accuracy. In the text there is nothing that should not be thoroughly mastered by every scholar in the upper middle classes of an Indian School, but there is sufficient, *if mastered*, to give him a thorough and practical knowledge of the grammar of the language.

The book contains abundant exercises. No apology is made for the large proportion of these which consist of errors to be corrected. If rightly used, no class of exercise is more useful than this. Pupils should be required to correct the sentences *in writing, unaided*, writing only the corrected form. Then, and *not till then*, should the exercises be done in class. Subsequently, in periods of review, pupils should be required to correct the sentences at sight. In English and American Secondary Schools the correction of false grammar is an exercise increasingly used by the best teachers. Where English is studied as a foreign tongue such exercises are still more useful and necessary.

LONDON,

August 29th, 1903

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	I
ORTHOGRAPHY	2
CAPITALS AND SMALL LETTERS	2
VOWELS AND CONSONANTS	4
SYLLABLES AND WORDS	5
ETYMOLOGY, pages 7-90	
PARTS OF SPEECH	7
THE NOUN	8-24
Classification of Nouns	9
Inflection of Nouns	11
Gender	11
Indicated I By a different word	12
II By a different ending	13
III By adding a word	14
Number	14
Formation of Plural	15-16
Case Nominative, Possessive, Objective	20
Declension of Nouns	22
Parsing of Nouns	23
THE ADJECTIVE	24-34
Classes of Adjective	24
Adjectives of Quality	25
Rules of Comparison	25
Numeral Adjectives Definite, Indefinite, and Distributive	30
Demonstrative Adjectives	32
The Articles	32
Adjective Pronouns	33
Adjectives used as Nouns	33
Parsing of Adjectives	34

	PAGE
THE PRONOUN	35-45
Classes of Pronouns	35
Personal Pronouns	36
Declension of	36
Reflexive Pronouns	37
Demonstrative Pronouns	39
Indefinite Demonstrative Pronouns	40
Relative or Conjunctive Pronouns	40
Interrogative Pronouns	43
Reciprocal Pronouns	44
Parsing of Pronouns	44
THE VERB	45-76
Transitive and Intransitive Verbs	45
Verbs of Incomplete Predication	45
Factitive Verbs	46
Inflections of the Verb	48
Voice, Active and Passive	48
Mood Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive	49
Gerunds and Participles	50
Tense	51
Table of Tenses	53
Conjugations	54
Strong Verbs	55
Weak Verbs	57
Auxiliary Verbs	60
Defective Verbs	71
Various Forms of Verbs	73
Causative Verbs	75
Impersonal Verbs	75
Parsing of Verbs	75
THE ADVERB	77 80
Simple Adverbs	77
Relative and Conjunctive Adverbs	77
Interrogative Adverbs	77
Comparison of Adverbs	78
Formation of Adverbs	79
Parsing of Adverbs	80
THE PREPOSITION	80 83
Simple Prepositions	81
Compound Prepositions	82
Phrase Prepositions	82
THE CONJUNCTION	83-86
Co ordinate Conjunctions	84
Subordinative Conjunctions	84
Correlative Conjunctions	85
THE INTERJECTION	86
THE SAME WORD AS DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH	87

SYNTAX, pages 96-160	PAGE
CONCORD, GOVERNMENT, ORDER	91
THE NOUN Subject and Verb	92
Case of the Noun	99
THE ADJECTIVE	104
THE ARTICLE	108
THE PRONOUN	114
THE VERB	120
The Participles	127
Uses of the Tenses	127
The Subjunctive Mood	133
Sequence of the Tenses	134
Direct and Indirect-Narration	135
Negative Sentences	141
THE ADVERB	143
THE PREPOSITION	146
List of Words followed by Prepositions	149
THE CONJUNCTION	158
THE INTERJECTION	160
ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES, pages 162-183	
THE SIMPLE SENTENCE	163
The Subject	163
The Predicate	165
The Object	167
THE COMPLEX SENTENCE	174
Analysis of Complex Sentences	175
THE COMPOUND SENTENCE	176
Analysis of Compound Sentences	181
WORD BUILDING, pages 184-198	
FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS	184
PRIMARY DERIVATIVES	187
SECONDARY DERIVATIVES	188
English Prefixes	188
English Suffixes	189
Formation of Derivatives	191
Influence of Accent	193
Latin and French Prefixes	194
Latin and French Suffixes	196

NEW MANUAL
OF
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION

1 We make known our thoughts by Spoken and Written Language.

The word *Language* comes from a Latin word meaning the *tongue*.
Spoken language was before *written* language.

Spoken Language is made up of *sounds*.

The sounds made in speaking are said to be *articulate*, while those made by dogs, &c., are called *inarticulate*. *Articulate* means *joined*. *Articulate* sounds join together. Man alone is able to speak.

Written Language is made up of *letters*, which stand for *sounds*.

Sounds, or letters, are united to form **Words**.

Two or more words having a full meaning, form a **Sentence**.

The word *Sentence* comes from a Latin word meaning *what one thinks*.

GRAMMAR explains the proper use of language.

The word *Grammar* comes from a Greek word meaning a *letter*.

(ENGLISH GRAMMAR teaches us to speak and write the English language correctly.)

2 The three principal divisions of Grammar are ORTHO'GRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, and SYN'TAX }

{ Orthography treats of *letters*, Etymology, of *words*, and Syntax, of the *arrangement of words in sentences* }

{ Prosody, which treats of the *laws of metre or versification*, is a fourth division of Grammar }

ORTHOGRAPHY

3 ORTHOGRAPHY teaches the forms and sounds of letters, and the right way of spelling words

The word *Orthography* comes from a Greek word meaning *correct writing*

CAPITALS AND SMALL LETTERS

A **Letter** is a mark which stands for a simple sound -

The letters of any language are called its **Alphabet**
The English Alphabet contains twenty-six letters

The word Alphabet comes from *Alpha beta*, the first two Greek letters In the same way we use "A B, C," in the sense of *Alphabet*

Letters have two forms—**capitals** and **small letters**.

The word *Capital* comes from a Latin word meaning *head*

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

The above are called *Roman* characters Others, named *Italics*, are sometimes used to point out emphatic or important words In the Bible however, Italics denote that there are no words answering to them in the original /

Words intended to be very emphatic are often printed in **SMALL CAPITALS**

4 The following words should begin with capitals —

- (1) The first word of every sentence
- (2) The first word of every line of poetry

- (3) The first word of a *direct* quotation¹
- (4) The names of the Supreme Being
- (5) All proper names, and words derived from them, whether nouns or adjectives
- (6) The title of a person or of a book, as, His Majesty, Macaulay's *History of England*
- (7) Common names personified, or spoken of as persons, as, "O Death!"
- (8) Names of the days of the week and of the months of the year
- (9) Any important word, as, the "Reformation"
- (10) The words *I* and *O*
- (11) Single letters standing for words, as, B A, M A.

EXERCISE I

Correct the errors in the use of Capital Letters in the following sentences

When socrates was Building himself a House at athens, being asked by one that observed the littleness of the Design, Why a man so eminent would not have an abode more suitable to his dignity "I shall think Myself sufficiently Accommodated," replied he, "If I shall see that narrow Habitation filled with real friends"

Once to every man and Nation comes the moment to decide,
In the Strife of truth with falsehood, for the good or evil Side

Anne, queen of great britain and ireland, ascended the Throne on the 8th of March, 1701, and Died on the 1st of august, 1714 her Reign was rendered remarkable by the Victories of the duke of marlborough on the continent of europe, And the union Between england and scotland

these are Thy Glorious Works, parent of Good!
almighty, Thine this universal frame!

Carlyle wrote "remember, now and always, that Life is no Idle Dream, but a Solemn Reality based upon eternity, and encompassed by eternity Find out your Task Stand to it the Night cometh when no Man can Work"

I am monarch of all I Survey,
my right there is none to Dispute,
from the Centre all round to the sea,
I am Lord of the Fowl and the Brute

¹ A *quotation* is the repeating of something said or written by another. A quotation is *direct* when *the very words* are repeated. Thus "He said 'I will come'" Here we have a *direct* quotation, in "He said he would come," we have an *indirect* one.

o solitude ! Where are the charms,
that Sages have seen in thy face ?
better Dwell in the midst of alarms,
than Reign in this Horrible Place

Hear the words of solomon, the Wise King of Israel, fear god, And keep his Commandments, For this is the whole Duty of Man "

the st george Arrived at lingsdown From liverpool on tuesday evening at Eight o'clock, and will Sail at six O'clock on thursday morning

VOWELS AND CONSONANTS

5 Letters are divided into VOWELS and CONSONANTS

A **Vowel** is a letter which can be sounded by itself

A **Consonant** is a letter which cannot be sounded without the help of a vowel

Vowel comes from a word which means *sounding*, *Consonant*, from a word which means *sounding together*

The Vowels are, a, e, i, o, u, with w and y when they do not begin a syllable) The remaining letters, with w and y when they begin a syllable, are **Consonants**

The vowels have different sounds, long, short, &c, as, a in tame, man, far, fall

The letters w and y are sometimes called *Semi vowels* or *Half vowels*, as they are used both as vowels and consonants

Letters which are not sounded are said to be *silent*, as, g in sign

The English Alphabet is very defective The same letter often stands for different sounds, the same sound is represented by different letters, letters are sometimes silent, as in know Some letters, as c, q, and x are unnecessary c may be represented by s or k, q by kw, and x by ks

6 Two vowels sounded together form a **Diphthong**

Diphthong (pronounced *dip thong*), means two sounds

When both vowels are heard, it is called a **proper**, or true, *Diphthong*, as, oy in boy When only one vowel is heard, it is called an **improper**, or false, *Diphthong*, as, eo in people

Three vowels sounded together form a **Triphthong**, as, ew in view, or eau in beauty

EXERCISE II

Point out the Vowels, Consonants, Silent letters, Proper and Improper Diphthongs, and Triphthongs, in the following words —

how	laugh	easy	Cæsar
why	heard	beautiful	praise
two	honour	league	howl
yew	piece	believe	maul
window	clean	view	typhoon
yellow	twitch	thousand	rue
sweetly	away	noise	sew
cow	moan	boy	mew
eye	row	feud	leisure
ewe	yesterday	straw	heroic
bear	awful	mice	coward
haul	whether	herb	weather
marble	twin	quit	onion
buoy	hyssop	knife	malign

Write six words in which w is a vowel, and six in which it is a consonant

Write six words in which y is a vowel, and six in which it is a consonant

Write six words containing proper diphthongs, and six containing improper diphthongs

SYLLABLES AND WORDS

7 A **Syllable** is as much of a word as can be sounded at once

In every syllable there must be at least one vowel

A **Word** is an articulate sound, having some meaning

A **Prim'itive Word** is one in its simplest form, as, *large, good* A word of this kind is sometimes called a **root**

A **Deriv'ative Word** is one that is formed from some simpler word, as, *larger, goodness*

Primitive comes from a word meaning *first*, *Derivative* means *drawn from*

A **Simple Word** is not made up of other words, as, *pen*

A **Compound Word** consists of two or more simple words; as, *pen-knife, notwithstanding*

8 A word of *one* syllable is called a **Mon'osyllable**, of *two* syllables, a **Dissyllable**, of *three*, a **Trisyllable**, of more than three, a **Polysyllable**

Mono means one, *di* two, *tri*- three, *poly* many

Accent is the stress of the voice upon a certain *syllable*, as *dif' fer*

Emphasis is the stress of the voice upon an important *word*

In writing, it is often necessary to divide words at the end of lines
The following rules should be observed —

- (1) Divide according to pronunciation, as, ru-in
 - (2) Separate compound words into the simple words of which they are composed, as pen man
 - (3) Keep the root whole in derivative words, separate grammatical prefixes and endings, as re-form er
 - (4) Never divide words of one syllable, or letters of the same syllable
- Compound words should not be divided, except where it is necessary at the end of a line, thus, *like wise* should not be written *like wise*

EXERCISE III

Divide the following words into syllables and mark the accented Syllable in each, as, re-form'

reflection	neighbour	musician	addition
turmoil	notion	flexible	strangle
embarrass	sensual	extension	stupor
dungeon	justice	condition	tissue
builder	tuneful	incomprehensible	beehive
rejoice	symptom	condescend	martyr
annoy	unanimous	river	purloin
leopard	antiquity	lesson	potentia
marriage	foliage	continent	genuine
honest	salvation	promises	avoid
council	costume	credible	creature
decisive	exhaust	glutton	exercise
incline	conspicuous	globular	income
embrace	equivocal	fulfil	hapless
monarchy	monument	factory	incident
seamanship	electric	emergence	erudite
theatre	detonate	efface	spherical
concert	eternal	inductive	theorize
devious	mortality	separate	unicorn
implicate	pimple	protrude	parable
justify	sentinel	quadruped	surfeit

ETYMOLOGY

9. ETYMOLOGY treats of words considered separately—their history, derivation, classification, and the changes they undergo

The changes in the forms of words are called **Inflections**.

PARTS OF SPEECH

10. The different classes into which words are divided are called **Parts of Speech**

There are eight parts of speech, namely, the **Noun**, the **Adjective**, the **Pronoun**, the **Verb**, the **Adverb**, the **Preposition**, the **Conjunction**, and the **Interjection**

{The **Article** is sometimes reckoned as a distinct part of speech, but it is an adjective

The articles are *a*, or *an*, and *the*. The word *article* comes from a Latin word meaning *little joint*. Articles are always joined to nouns

11. A **NOUN** is the name of a person, place, or thing, as, *boy*, *Madras*, *book*, *sweetness*, *stone*

The word *Noun* comes from a Latin word meaning *name*

12. An **ADJECTIVE** is a word which qualifies a noun, as, a *good* man, *four* boys

The word *Adjective* comes from a Latin word meaning *thrown to*

13. A **PRONOUN** is a word used in the place of a noun, as, If Rama is here, tell *him* to come

Pro is a Latin prefix meaning *for*

14. A **VERB** is a word which *declares* or *tells* something about some person or thing, as, I *am* the man *works*

The word *Verb* comes from a Latin word meaning *word*. There can't be a sentence without a verb

15. An **ADVERB** is a word which goes with a verb, an adjective or another adverb, to modify its meaning, as,

speak *correctly*, a *very* large mango, you write *too* quickly, the train was *partly* over the bridge }

Ad is a Latin prefix meaning *to*

16 } A **PREPOSITION** is a word placed before a noun or a pronoun to show how the person or thing denoted stands in relation to some other person or thing, as, A house *on* a hill }

Preposition comes from a Latin word meaning *placed before*

17 } A **CONJUNCTION** is a word which joins words or sentences, as, Rice *and* curry, John went home, *but* James remained }

Conjunction comes from a Latin word meaning *joined together*

18 } An **INTERJECTION** is a word which expresses some sudden feeling, as, *Ah ! Alas !* }

Interjection comes from a Latin word meaning *thrown between*

THE NOUN

19 } A **NOUN** is the name of a person, place, or thing }

The *name* of anything we can think of, living or lifeless, is a noun
The **THING ITSELF** is not a noun—only its *name*

{ Nouns are either **Concrete** or **Abstract** }

{ 20 } A **Concrete Noun** denotes something that has an actual and separate existence, as *John, house, army, gold*
Concrete Nouns are either *Proper Common, Collective, or Material* }

{ 21 } A **Proper Noun** denotes only one person or thing which it distinguishes from all others, as, *Ramaswamy, Madras, Africa* }

A proper noun may belong equally to many individuals, but whenever it is used it denotes only one of them There are many different persons called Ramaswamy, but whenever we use the name we refer to a par

ticular person and no other. The word **proper** comes from a Latin word meaning *own*. A proper name is *one's own name*.

22 A **Common Noun** is one that denotes any individual of a particular *class* or *kind*, as, dog, town, table. Common nouns are, therefore, often called **Class Names**.

The fundamental distinction between **Common** and **Proper** nouns is that the former have meaning and the latter have not. A proper noun merely indicates or points out an individual. It is a mark or sign only, and implies no quality as belonging to the object denoted. A common noun on the other hand implies that the individual denoted by it possesses the various qualities that are distinctive of, and essential to, the class of which it is the name. Proper names are thus in a sense arbitrary, while common names are not. A man who has a horse called Victor and a dog called Bruce may change the names if he chooses, and call the horse Bruce and the dog Victor, but he cannot so change the common names horse and dog, for these names *have a meaning*. Most proper names have a meaning in their *origin* or derivation, but *in their use they have none*.

Proper nouns are used as *Common* when they denote a class or one of the individuals of a class, as, *the Cæsars, the Howards, the Solomon of his age*.

A *Common* noun becomes *Proper* when it points out a particular person or thing. It is then preceded by an adjective, generally the definite article *the*, as, *the Earth*.

23 A **Collective Noun** denotes a number of persons or things taken as *one*, as *army, flock, crowd*.

Collective comes from a word meaning *gathered together*.

Collective nouns are also **Common**. There are many armies, flocks, crowds.

When a Collective noun is so used as that the individuals denoted are thought of separately and not as one body, it is called a **Noun of Multitude**, as, *The Committee were divided in opinion*.

24 **Material Nouns** denote the names of substances, as, *gold, iron, stone, wood*.

Material comes from a word meaning *matter*, that of which anything is made.

A word may be a Material or a Common noun, according to the sense, as, Rice is eaten, Rice is a plant. In the first sentence "rice" is a material noun, in the second, a common noun.

25 An **Abstract Noun** is the name of a state, quality, or action, as *servitude, whiteness, truth, reading, laughter*;

An abstract noun denotes something that has no separate existence. *Redness, truth, virtue*, exist only in persons or things that are red, true, or virtuous. But we can separate them in thought, and think or speak of them as though they existed independently.

The word *abstract* comes from a Latin word meaning *drawn off*.

Abstract Nouns may denote—(a) A quality, as, *honesty, hardness*, (b) A state, as, *health, sleep*, (c) A feeling or an action, as, *pain, running*, (d) Names of arts and sciences, as, *painting, astronomy*;

Abstract Nouns are used as common when they denote the person or thing to which the action, state or quality belongs. "Beauty is admired," "His sight is keen" (abstract), "She is a beauty," "It was a glorious sight" (common)'

Abstract Nouns are chiefly formed from —

- (1) *Adjectives*, as, *wise - wisdom, idle, idleness*
- (2) *Nouns*, as, *friend - friendship, thief, theft*
- (3) *Verbs*, as, *see, sight, think, thought*.

EXERCISE IV

Point out the Nouns in the following sentences, and name the Class to which each belongs —

China is a country in Asia. The Earth is warmed by the rays of the sun. Govind told the truth. Gold is a precious metal. The police dispersed the crowd. London is the largest city in the world. The teas in the market to-day are inferior. Sunday is the first day of the week. Health is wealth. The people were divided in their opinions. Righteousness exalteth a nation. The fleet sailed yesterday. The teacher is a man of learning. The judge dismissed the jury. The officer joined his regiment.

Righteousness exalteth a nation, but sin is a reproach to any people. The power of speech separates man from the brute creation and by enabling him to communicate his thought with speed and accuracy helps him to maintain his supremacy. We speak of the dominion of mind over matter but without speech mind would be an eagle without wings, a lamb without feet. Pride goeth before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall.

"The present scene, the future lot,
His joys, his wants, were all forgot."

"Our life is but a sleep and a forgetting,
The soul that rises with us, our life's star,
Hath elsewhere had its setting,
And cometh from afar"

INFLECTIONS OF NOUNS

GENDER

26 Gender is that form of the Noun which shows whether what is spoken of is *male*, *female*, or *neither*

There are two sexes—the *male* sex and the *female* sex

The names of males are of the **Masculine Gender**, the names of females are of the **Feminine Gender** The names of things without life are **Neuter**, that is, neither masculine nor feminine.]

The word *Gender* means *kind* or *class* It belongs only to words A *man* is of the male sex, the word *man* is of the masculine gender *Masculine* comes from a word meaning *male*, *Feminine* from a word meaning *woman*, *Neuter* means *not either*

27 Words applied to both sexes are said to be of the **Common gender**, as *parent*, *child*, *friend*, *servant*

Collective nouns, though denoting living beings, are neuter, as, *crowd*, *multitudes* .

Young children and the lower animals are usually spoken of as neuter

Things without life are sometimes spoken of as if they were persons, as, "O gentle Sleep!" They are then said to be *personified* Such nouns are either masculine or feminine)

Things remarkable for strength, courage, greatness, &c, are regarded as males, as, the Sun, Death, War, Time, Summer, Winter, &c

Things giving the idea of beauty, fertility, gentleness, weakness, grace, &c, are regarded as females, the Moon the Earth, Hope, Virtue, Charity, Peace, Liberty, Modesty, &c a sailor calls his ship "she"

In Collins' "Ode on The Passions," such passions as Anger, Despair, Revenge are masculine, while Melancholy, Cheerfulness, Hope, &c, are feminine

28 There are three ways of distinguishing Gender —

I By a different word, as,

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Bachelor	maid, spinster ¹	Horse,* stallion	mare
Boar	sow	Husband	wife
Boy	girl	King	queen
Brother	sister	Lord	lady
Buck	doe	Man	woman
Bull, or ox	cow	Miltre (fish)	spawner
Bullock, or steer	heifer	Monk	nun
Cock	hen	Nephew	niece
Colt	filly	Papa'	mamma'
Dog,* hound*	bitch	Ram, wether	ewe
Drake	duck	Sir, or sire	madam, dame ²
Drone	bee*	Sire (father of a colt)	dam (mother of a colt)
Earl	countess	Sloven	slut
Father	mother	Son	daughter
Friar	sister	Strag	hind
Gander	goose	Uncle	aunt
Gentleman	lady	Wizard	witch
Hart	roe		

II By a different ending

(1) By adding *ess* to the unchanged masculine form —

Author	authoress, or author	Patron	patroness
Baron	baroness	Peer	peeress
Count	countess	Poet	poetess, or poet
Deacon	deaconess	Porter	porteress
Giant	giantess	Priest	priestess
Heir	heiress	Prior	prioress
Host	hostess	Prophet	prophetess
Jew	Jewess	Shepherd	shepherdess
Lion	lioness	Tutor	tutoress
Mayor	mayoress	Viscount	viscountess

¹ *Spinster* is a legal word denoting an unmarried woman. In Old English *ster* was much used as a feminine suffix or ending.

² *Dame* may be used for a noble lady, for the mistress of a family or of a school for young children.

* These words are also used as of common gender.

(2) *By adding **ess** after omitting the final vowel, or a vowel preceding the final consonant —*

Actor	actress	Instructor	instructress
Ambassador	ambassadress	Negro	negress
Arbiter	arbitress	Prince	princess
Benefactor	benefactress	Protector	protectress
Conductor	conductress	Songster	songstress
Director	directress	Tiger	tigress
Enchanter	enchantress	Trutor	traitress
Hunter	huntness	Votary	votress
Tempter	temptress		

(3) *The following feminines in **ess** are formed irregularly —*

Abbot	abbess	Governor	governess
Adulterer	adulteress	Marquis	marquioness
Duke	duchess	Master	mistress
Emperor	empress	Murderer	murderess
God	goddess	Sorcerer	sorceress

The ending **-ess** was taken from the French **-esse**, which was derived from the Latin **-issa**

Governess now means a tutoress, or instructress. The word *governor* rarely means *tutor*. In the sense of *ruler* it is of common gender.

Songster is usually applied to birds. **Singer** is now used both for men and women. **Ster** was originally a feminine suffix, so that songstress and seamstress are etymologically double feminines.

(4) *By other endings*

Administrator	administratrix	Lad	lass
Executor	executrix	Landgrave	Landgravine
Testator	testatrix	Margrave	Margravine
Bern (bo)	bellic (bel)	Czar or Czar	Czarina or Tsarina
Hero	heroin	Sultan	Sultana
Fox	vixen		

Vixen is used in a few nouns taken directly from the Latin. **En** was an old English feminine ending. Bridegroom, *fem* bride, and widower, *fem* widow, are instances where the masculine is formed from the feminine. **Vixen** as the *fem* of **fox** is almost obsolete. **Vixen** now means a bad-tempered woman.

III By placing a word before or after.

(1) *By placing a word before*

Bull calf	cow calf	He goat	she goat
Billy-goat	nanny-goat	Jack-ass	she ass
Buck rabbit	doe rabbit	Man-servant	maid-servant
Cock sparrow	hen-sparrow		

(2) *By placing a word after*

Foster father	foster-mother	Pea cock	pea hen
Gentle-man	gentle woman	Step father	step mother
Grand-father	grand-mother	Step son	step daughter
Land-lord	land lady	Washer-man	washer-woman
Milk-man	milk-maid	Servant-man	servant maid

29 Words of Common Gender — The following are examples of nouns of common gender, but there are many others — *cousin, parent, friend, bird, fowl, child, baby, infant, servant, monarch, pupil, orphan, foal, spouse, &c*

EXERCISE V

What is the Gender of the following nouns? In the case of masculines and feminines give the form for the opposite gender —

duck	husband	sultan	bitch
shepherd	witness	testatrix	mare
beauty	parent	margravine	boar
✓ heart	prince	sloven	dame
✓ flock	count	nun	tutor
✓ widower	marquis	ship	owner
✓ companion	heroine	sovereign	child
lady	stag	friar	landlord
uncle	abbess	doctor	doe
virtue	hart	cool	drake

NUMBER

30 When a noun denotes only *one* thing, it is in the Singular Number When it denotes *more than one*, it is in the Plural Number

Singular means *one*, *Plural*, more The difference in the numbers is usually shown by a change in the form of the word

31 The **Plural** is generally formed by adding *s* to the **Singular**, as, pen, pens, boy, boys

32 Nouns ending in *s*, *sh*, *ch* soft, *x* or *z*, form the plural by adding *es*, as, loss, losses, bush, bushes, watch, watches, box, boxes, topaz, topazes

It will be noticed that all these words end in a sibilant or *s* sound The vowel *e* is added to such words, because they could not otherwise be properly pronounced

When *ch* has the sound of *k*, *s* only is added, as monarch, monarchs

33 Most nouns in *o* add *es* to the singular, as, buffalo, buffaloes, echo, echoes, hero, heroes, mango, mangoes, negro, negroes, potato, potatoes

A few nouns in less common use ending in *o*, with all words ending in *eo*, *io*, *oo*, and *jo*, add *s* only, as, canto, cantos, grotto, grottos, quarto, quartos, halo, halos, memento, mementos, proviso, provisos; piano, pianos, solo, solos, cameo, cameos, folio, folios, nuncio, nuncios, bamboo, bamboos, embryo, embryos

34 Nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant change *y* into *ies* But if the *y* is preceded by a vowel *s* alone is added, as, city, cities, day, days, journey, journeys

Nouns ending in *quy* take *ies*, as, obsequy, obsequies

Proper names in *y* do not usually change the *y*, as, Henry, Henrys, Mary, Marys But *Henries* and *Maries* are also used

35 Most nouns ending in *f* or *fe*, change *f* or *fe* into *ves* in the plural, as, calf, calves, half, halves, life, lives, wolf, wolves, but nouns in *ff* take *s* only, as, cuff, cuffs

The following are exceptions to this rule —chief, chiefs, cliff, cliffs, dwarf, dwarfs, fife, fifes, grief, griefs, gulf, gulfs, hoof, hoofs, proof, proofs, roof, roofs, serf, serfs, turf, turfs, reef, reefs, safe, safes, strife, strifes, wolf, wolfs, waif, waifs, relief, reliefs

Scarf and wharf have both forms, scarfs and scarves, wharfs and wharves, the latter being more usual Staff, in the sense of a stick or pole, has staves, in all other senses, staffs

36 The following nouns form their plural by a vowel change man, men, woman, women, foot, feet, goose, geese, tooth, teeth, louse, lice, mouse, mice.

Coachman has coachmen, Dutchman, Dutchmen, Englishman, Englishmen, but German has Germans, Norman, Normans, Brahman has Brahmans, and Mussulman, Mussulmans, but in these cases the terminations are not the English word *man*

37 A few nouns form their plural in *en*, as, ox, oxen, child, children, brother, brethren (see below, 40)

The plural of *cow* was formerly *kine* *Cows* is now generally used

38 Some nouns are the same in both numbers, as, deer, sheep, swine, salmon, cannon, species

The number is shown by other words in the sentence

In reckoning, the nouns, *yoke, head, pair, brace, dozen, score, hundred, hundredweight* and *pie*, are used in the plural without *s*, as, five head of cattle, two dozen, twenty hundredweight make a ton, the price is three pie, &c

Similarly in such compounds as a ten-rupee note a four-anna piece, a seven pound weight, a two foot rule an eight-day clock a two year old horse, a four ton order, &c the singular form is used in a plural sense, though in other uses the words form plurals in the ordinary way In expressions like 10,000 foot, 1000 horse, the noun *soldiers* is understood

39 Some nouns have different meanings in different numbers —

- Singular वापसी
Return, a coming back
Compass, रांगु or extent
Advice counsel सलाह
Good, welfare भला
Iron, the metal लोहा
Force strength ताकत
Air, atmosphere हवा
Physic, medicine दवा

Plural
Returns, statistics नबूये
Compasses, an instrument कम्पास
Advices, information सूचना
Goods property माल
Irons, fetters made of iron बंधन
Forces army फौज
Airs, behaviour आचरण
Physics, a science फिजिक्स

40 Some nouns have two plural forms with different

meanings —

Beef *beefs* (kinds of beef), *leaves* (oaken), or the same (either) *beef* (the same society) cloth, *cloths* (kinds of cloth), *clothes* (dress), *die*, *dies* (stamps for coming), *dice* (for play), fish *fish* (kind), *fish* (number), *germs*, *germs* (several persons), *germs* (spirits), *index*, *indexes* (to a book), *indices* (signs in algebra), *peas* (separate seed), *peas* (collective), *penny*, *pennies* (separate coins), *perce* (collective), shot, *shot* (the number of balls), *shots* (the number of times fired)

41 Some nouns which have only one plural form have an additional meaning in the plural totally distinct from their simple plural sense —

— Customs = (1) habits, and (2) a tax on imports and exports, colours = (1) tints, and (2) the flag of a regiment, letters = (1) epistles or alphabetical symbols, and (2) learning, pains = (1) sufferings and (2) minute care, effects = (1) consequences, and (2) movable goods, parts = (1) portions, and (2) abilities, quarters = (1) fourth parts, and (2) lodgings, manners = (1) modes, and (2) correct behaviour, arms = (1) the upper limbs, and (2) weapons, numbers = (1) numbers used in counting, and (2) poetry, spectacles = (1) things seen, and (2) glasses for the eyes, premises = (1) propositions, and (2) a building and its surroundings

42 Proper, material, and abstract nouns have no plurals except when they are used as common nouns

Proper nouns take a plural when they apply to several persons, as the Cæsars. Material nouns have plurals when different sorts are meant, as, wines, oils. Abstract nouns have plurals when they denote different kinds of the quality named, as, He has many virtues. In such cases the nouns are used as common.

Furniture, information and some other words are not used in the plural. This applies to *abuse*, when used in the sense of bad language. In the case of a wrong use of anything it has *abuses*.

43 Some nouns have no singular

These are generally the names of things of more parts than one, as tongs, shears, bellows, pincers, scissors, trousers. The following are other examples — morals, Commons (House of), dregs, morsels, oats, nuptials, proceeds (of a sale), vitals, shrimbles, obsequies, thanks, tidings, vituals, auspices, environs

44 Some nouns, plural in form, are generally treated as singular

Such are the names of certain sciences derived from the Greek, as, ethics, hydrostatics, mathematics, mechanics, optics, physics, politics. *Amends* and *odds* are sometimes used as singular, *means* is generally so, *news* and *gallows* are always singular

45 Some nouns, plural in form, are used in both numbers according to the sense, as, series, species, pains, alms and riches, properly singular, are now generally plural

46 The plural of compound nouns is generally formed by inflecting the principal noun, as, maid-*servants*, sons-in-law, major-*generals*

But the sign of the plural is at the end of words in *-ful*, or when the meaning is incomplete till the whole word is known, as, spoonfuls, three-per cents. Some compound nouns have both the words inflected, as, men servants, women servants, knights-templars, lords justices

We may say either the *Miss Browns* or the *Misses Brown*. In addressing letters the second form is used

47 The plural of letters and arithmetical figures is formed by adding an *apostrophe* (') and *s*, as B A's, 5's

48 Many nouns taken from other languages keep their own plurals

(1) Nouns ending in *is* change the *is* into *es*, as, *axis*, *axes*, *basis*, *bases*, *crisis*, *crises*

(2) Nouns ending in *um* or *on* change *um* and *on* into *a* in the plural, as, *datum*, *data*, *phenomenon*, *phenomena*

(3) Most nouns ending in *us* change *us* into *i*, as, *focus*, *foci*. But *genus* has *genera*

(4) Nouns ending in *ex* or *ix* change them into *ices*, as, *apex*, *apices*, *appendix*, *appendices*, and *appendices*

(5) Formula has *formulae*, cherub, *cherubim*, seraph, *seraphim*, beau, *beaux*, *monsieur*, *messieurs*, bandit, *banditti*

The present tendency is to reject foreign plurals, cherubs, formulas, bandits &c, are often used

Some foreign nouns are used only in the plural as aborigines, antipodes, archives, literati, minutæ

EXERCISE VI

Write the Plural of the following nouns —

man	mass	lynx	box
cap	copy	beauty	echo
table	monarch	perch	joy
tax	study	woe	ass
leaf	ray	knife	sheriff
hoax	sex	elf	tetrarch
hero	loaf	ally	essay
stone	couch	thief	sow
princess	shirt	volcano	ox
queen	bunch	genius	sherif
foot	watch	heresy	fish
lash	half	attorney	cross
wolf	penny	staff	baby
arch	negro	distaff	kiss
hobby	buffalo	stomach	army
nuncio	child	valley	story
cargo	sky	journey	tyro
folio	couch	wife	money
father-in-law	formula	beau	apex
basis	crisis	Miss Fraser	datum
appendix	court-martial	man-servant	nebula
mouthful	erratum	monsieur	arcaneum
bandit	cherub	seraph	oasis
maid-servant	M A	genus	alumnus
governor-general	phenomenon	knight-templar	lord-justice
apparatus	parenthesis	bureau	focus

Write the Singular of the following nouns —

shelves	dice	chimneys	genii
cities	indexes	teeth	soliloquies
attorneys	loaves	griefs	bellows
mice	bunches	toes	ponies
sheep	mangoes	deer	goods
scissors	sons-in law	children	line
churches	mersles	news	bees
potatoes	brethren	genuses	perse
analyses	data	phenomena	oases
effluvia	staves	dormice	genera
species	strata	radii	stamina
messieurs	theses	beaux	indices
bases	seraphim	enterra	bureaux
formulae	clothes	elves	series
alumni	dicta	media	agenda

Give the meanings of the following words —

Iron and irons, force and forces, advice and advices, return and returns, dies and dice, indexes and indices, shot and shots, genu and genu, cloth and clothes, brothers and brethren, pennies and pence

Correct the following sentences where necessary —

Your writing is bad, you must take more pain with it. My brother has 100 heads of cattle. Ten yokes of oxen were ploughing. I have lost a ten rupees note. My scissors is not strong enough. Mechanics are his favourite study. He has three sons in laws. Step fathers are not always kind. It is well for us when the crisis of life finds us prepared. Large households have generally both men and women servants. A five shillings piece is called a crown. The race was for four-years olds only.

CASE

49 CASE is that form of the noun which shows its relation to some other word in the sentence.

English nouns have three principal Cases the Nominative, Possessive, and Objective.

The Nominative names the *agent*, or one who does something as, *Govind* brought a slate.

Nominative comes from a Latin word which means *naming*.

The Possessive denotes the *possessor* or owner, as *Rama's* book.

The Objective denotes the *object*, or that to which something is done, as, Krishna caught a *bird*.

The Nominative and Objective are *alike* in form. They are distinguished by their position as regards the verb, or by the sense. The nominative generally comes *before* the verb, and the objective *after* it, as, Rama struck Govind. To find the nominative, ask a question by putting *who* or *what* before the verb, and the answer will be the nominative. When a noun in the objective is governed by a verb, it answers to the question formed by putting *whom* or *what* before the verb and its subject. Thus, *Who* struck Govind? Rama (nominative) *Whom* did Rama strike? Govind (objective).

50 The possessive is formed by adding an *apostrophe* (') and *s* to the nominative, as, Joseph's

Apostrophe means *turned away*. It is so named because it shows that something has been left out. In Old English the possessive ended in *es*. The *e* was left out, and an apostrophe was put in its place.

The Possessive is now the only case in which English nouns change their form.

Possession is often expressed by *of*, as, The book *of* Rama.

51 When the plural ends in *s*, the possessive is formed by adding only an *apostrophe*, as, *books'*. When the plural does not end in *s*, the possessive is formed as in the singular, as, *men's*.

To avoid too many hissing sounds, the apostrophe only is added when the plural ends in *s*. For the same reason the letter *s* is omitted in the singular whenever the last syllable both begins and ends in *s*, and also before the word "sake," as, "Moses' rod," "for conscience' sake."

52 The possessive is generally used only with living beings or personified objects.

We may say "the fox's tail," but not "the house's roof." In the latter case the preposition *of* is used instead of the inflection, as, "the roof of the house." *Of* is also used with compound nouns in the plural, as, "the estates of my brothers-in-law."

Nouns denoting time or space, or dignified objects, may take the apostrophe and *s*, as, "a dry's journey," "a stone's throw," "the court's decree."

Collective nouns, even when denoting living beings, cannot take the possessive case. We cannot say "the multitude's uproar."

EXERCISE VII

Write down the Possessive Case, Singular and Plural, *of* —

Boy, lady, monkey, wife, thief, negro, chief, man, hero, mouse, wolf, goose, onli, min-servant, woman, child, mistress.

Change the following Possessives into Objectives with *of* —

A man's arm. This boy's sum is not correct. Ladies' shoes. Cowper's Letters. The woman's cries. The flies' stings. The gentleman's horse is dead. Milton's Poetical Works. Four oxen's heads. The

soldiers' camp Charles' affairs Children's toys Insects' wings A nation's tears Some men's promises

Put the following into the proper Possessive form, if they are not already in it —

The servants of the king The flowers of autumn The songs of the girls The dresses of the boys The quarrels of the soldiers The mane of the horse The colour of the ox The commanders of the armies The work of six men The lesson of Krishna is difficult The dens of the tigers John took the slate of William The wool of the sheep

53 When a name consists of several words, the sign of the possessive is added only to the last, as, William the Conqueror's tomb

54 When there are two or more separate nouns in the possessive case, the sign is added to the *last word* when *joint* possession is meant, as, "Govind and Krishna's horse" (one horse)

But when *separate* possession is meant, the sign is added to *each noun*, as "Govind's and Krishna's horses" (two horses)

55 Both *of* and *'s* are used when it is intended to indicate that the thing mentioned is only one of a number of similar things possessed, as, "This is a book of *Govind's*," that is, Govind has many books, and this is one of them

56 **Declension of Nouns** A noun is said to be **declined** when the various forms which it assumes to show *case* and *number* are written down in order The changes in its form are made chiefly by *endings* and are called its **inflections**

The word **case** comes from a Latin word meaning *a falling*, **inflexion** from one meaning *to bend in*, and **decline** and **declension** from one meaning *to slope down* The Nominative Case was represented by a perpendicular line, and the other cases by slanting lines

	<i>Sing</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Sing</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Sing</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom</i>	lady	ladies	man	men	ox	oxen
<i>Poss</i>	lady's	ladies'	man's	men's	ox's	oxen's
<i>Obj</i>	lady	ladies	men	men	ox	oxen

the watches that the thieves had stolen hidden under a hedge. The farmer bought hay for his oxen's food—

“Awake my soul and with the sun
Thy duly round of duties run,
Shake off dull sloth and early rise,
To pry thy morning sacrifice”

“Thus to relieve the wretched was his pride,
And e'en his failing leaned to virtue's side,
But in his duty, prompt at every call
He watched and wept, he prayed and felt for all,
And, as a bird each fond endearment tries
To tempt its new fledged offspring to the skies,
He tried each art, reproved each dull delay
Allured to brighter worlds, and led the way”

THE ADJECTIVE

58 An ADJECTIVE is a word joined to a noun to limit or confine its application

The word “strong” joined to “men” increases the *meaning* for it adds to the qualities implied by “men” the extra quality of strength. But it limits the *class*, for there are more men than strong men. Even adjective when thus added to a noun performs this double function.

An adjective may qualify *another* adjective, as, a *red* hot bar of iron.

An adjective is used *attributively* when it is joined to the noun which it qualifies, as, a *wise* king, and *predicatively* when it forms part of the predicate of a sentence, as, the king is *wise*.

Some nouns are used as adjectives, as, a *gold* ring.

CLASSES OF ADJECTIVES

59 Adjectives may be divided into four principal classes: Adjectives of Quality, Adjectives of Quantity, Numeral Adjectives, and Demonstrative Adjectives.

I Adjectives of Quality show the quality or state of the thing named, as a *fat* man.

Quality comes from a Latin word meaning *of what kind?* Most adjectives belong to this class. They may be divided

into **Common** and **Proper** Proper adjectives are formed from proper nouns, as *Indian English*

II **Adjectives of Quantity** show *how much* of a thing is meant, as, *much, little, some*

Quantity comes from a Latin word meaning *how much*

III **Numeral Adjectives** show *how many* are meant or *in what order*, as, *four, first*

IV **Demonstrative Adjectives** *point out* the thing spoken of, as, *this, that*

The above four classes respectively answer the questions (1) *Of what sort?* (2) *How much?* (3) *How many?* (4) *Which?*

ADJECTIVES OF QUALITY

60 Most adjectives of quality, two of quantity, viz, *much* and *little*, and two of number, viz, *many* and *few*, have three degrees of **Comparison**, the **Positive**, **Comparative**, and **Superlative** }

[The **Positive** expresses the *simple* quality, the **Comparative**, a *higher* or *lower* degree of the quality, the **Superlative**, the *highest* or *lowest* degree, as, *kind, kinder, kindest, less kind, least kind* }

The **Comparative** is used when *two* objects are compared, the **Superlative** when there are *more than two*

Proper Adjectives are not compared, neither are Common Adjectives of Quality the meanings of which do not allow of variations in degree, as, *golden, circular, right, left, weekly, &c*

Rules of Comparison

61 (1) Adjectives of *one* syllable are compared by adding *er* and *est* to the Positive, as, *hard, harder, hardest*
 (2) When the Positive ends in *e*, the letters *r* and *st* only are added, as, *wise, wiser, wisest*

(3) When the Positive ends in *y* preceded by a consonant, *y* is changed into *i* before *er* and *est*, as *dry*, *drier*, *driest*

(4) If a vowel precedes *y*, it is not changed into *i*, as, *gay*, *gay^{er}*, *gay^{est}*

(5) If the Adjective ends in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, the consonant is doubled, as, *red*, *redder*, *reddest*. But if it ends in two consonants, or has two vowels before the final consonant, the latter is not doubled, as, *thick*, *thicker*, *thickest*, *weak*, *weaker*, *weakest*

(6) Adjectives of more than two syllables, and most adjectives of two syllables, are compared by prefixing *more* and *most*, or *less* and *least*, as, *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*, *diligent*, *less diligent*, *least diligent*

Adjectives of two syllables ending in *e*, *ow*, or *y*, may also be compared like adjectives of one syllable, as, *able*, *abler*, *ablest*, *narrow*, *narrower*, *narrowest*, *happy*, *happier*, *happiest*

62 Some Adjectives are compared irregularly —

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
Bad, evil, ill	worse	worst
Far	farther	farthest
Fore	former	foremost, first
Good, well	better	best
Hind	hinder	hindmost, hindermost
Late	{ later (time) latter (order)	{ latest last
Little	less, lesser	least
Many (number)	more	most
Much (quantity)	more	most
Near	nearer	nearest, next
High	higher	highest, next
Old	older, elder	oldest, eldest

Better, worse, less, more, come from positives no longer in use

EXERCISE IX

Correct the following forms if necessary —

excellentest	sorniest	buoyantest	gruiest
solemnest	startling ^r	timider	sadest
sillyer	heartfeltest	foolisher	happyest

Write the Comparative and Superlative of the following Adjectives —

ample	coy	excellent	pure
gentle	weary	black	sleek
firm	delicate	tender	humane
numerous	large	gloomy	meagre
indefatigable	pretty	stern	puny
calm	rich	sly	naked
sober	rigorous	fat	bare
merry	long	thin	timid
cheerful	short	droll	gay
dry	deep	true	little

Give the Positive of the following Adjectives —

gentler	clearest	duller	funniest
wealthiest	fatter	griest	former
slenderer	whitest	madder	more
dimmiest	serenest	noblest	eldest
youngest	sadder	bulkier	latter
heavier	easiest	subtlest	worst
first	most	best	last

63 Some adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees are formed from words which in the positive degree are other parts of speech. Such are —

Forth (<i>adv</i>)	further	furthest
In (<i>adv</i>)	inner	inmost innermost
Out (<i>adv</i>)	outer, utter	outmost, utmost, uttermost
Up (<i>adv</i>)	upper	upmost, uppermost
Neath (<i>adv</i>)	nether	nethermost
Top (<i>noun</i>)		topmost

64 The following distinctions in meaning should be carefully noted —

(1) *Farther* is used for the *more distant* of two objects. *Further* means *more in advance* or *additional*. These meanings will not be confounded if the *positives* are remembered.

(2) *Later* refers to *time*, and is opposed to *earlier*, *latter* denotes *order*, and is opposed to *former*, as, You may stay *later* to day, The *former* and the *latter* rains.

(3) *Many* refers to *number*, *much* to *quantity*.

(4) *Older* and *oldest* are used of both persons and things *elder* and *eldest* of persons only, and chiefly with reference to members of the same family

65 Some adjectives have no positive, as, *under*, *undermost*, some have no comparative, as, *southern* *southernmost*

66 The comparative degree is generally followed by *than*, as, He is wiser than his brother But some adjectives ending in *-ior* (*superior*, *inferior*, *anterior*, *posterior*, *senior*, *junior*, *prior*) are followed by *to*, as, This is superior to that

Other adjectives in *-ior* and some comparatives, as, *former*, *latter*, &c., are used simply as adjectives in the positive degree, as, the *interior* parts, the *latter* run They do not take *than* or *to* after them

67 The syllable *ish* is sometimes added to the positive, to lessen its signification, as *black*, *blackish* When the positive ends in *e*, the *e* is omitted before *ish*, as, *white*, *whitish*

68 The adverb *very* is often prefixed to the positive to increase its signification by expressing a degree of quality somewhat less than the greatest, or superlative degree, as, *wise*, *very wise*

Too is sometimes wrongly used for *very*, as, "Yesterday was too hot," instead of, "Yesterday was very hot"

69 Double comparatives or superlatives are improper, thus, *more stronger* ought to be only *stronger*

70 It should be noted that the comparative and superlative of adjectives express the difference in the degree in which a particular quality is possessed by two or more objects- When we compare the degree in which two different qualities are possessed by one object the ordinary comparative form cannot be used

John is cleverer than James, is correct, *John is cleaver than industrious*, is wrong We must say, *John is more clever than industrious*, or better, *John is clever rather than industrious*, or, *John is not so industrious as [he is] clever*

EXERCISE X

Point out the Adjectives and name the Degree of Comparison in the following sentences —

London is the largest and wealthiest city in the world. The old man has a sharp knife. The inner garden contains some beautiful plants. I met a blind boy with a white dog. The first prize was won by a little girl. Lead is heavier than silver. He died in the worst man's worst room. The poor man has a wooden leg. The large black dog has a curly tail. This is a most interesting book. The brave sailor crosses the wild stormy seas. Which of the two is the larger? Which of the three is the finest? This rose is white.

Correct any errors you may find in the following sentences —

He expects to see happier days. You have got the lesser share. This book is more cheap than that. Govind is the shaper of the four boys. Autumn is the interestingest season of the year. Tuesday was more cold than Monday. This summer is hotter than the latest. Robert is more taller than William. Solomon was the wisest man, Methuselah was the eldest. Jane is luckier than Mary. This is the beautifullest flower I ever saw. My hat is littler than yours, but his is the littlest of the three. Ramu is the neghgentest boy in the class. This is the largest of the two, but that is the most beautiful. It is best to be silent than to speak in anger. The later of the two reasons that you gave is the most convincing. The weather has lately been warmer than wet. It has been warmish for a long while but yesterday was the most warmish day we have had.

ADJECTIVES OF QUANTITY AND NUMBER

71 Adjectives of Quantity restrict the application of the noun in quantity or degree. They are *much, little, no or none, some, any, great, small, all, half, &c*

Adjectives of Quantity are followed by a noun in the *singular* which must be either *abstract* or *material*, as, I have *much* work, He has *little* chance, Ramu has *great* ability but *no* perseverance. *Half* a loaf is better than *no* bread.

✓ *None* is used for *no* when the noun is understood, as, I have *no* money and can borrow *none* [= no money]

Little means *hardly any*, as, "I have *little* money." *A little* means *some*, as, "I have *a little* money."

72 Numeral Adjectives refer to *number*, as, *four*, *many*. They are divided into three classes *Definite*, *Indefinite*, and *Distributive*

73 Definite Numeral Adjectives denote exact numbers

They are divided into three kinds

(1) *Cardinal* numerals denote *how many*, as, *ten*, *four*

(2) *Ordinal* numerals denote *order in series*, as, *third*, *tenth*

Ordinal numbers may also be classed as *Demonstrative Adjectives*

(3) *Multiplicatives* show how often a thing is repeated

Multiplicative means *having the power to increase*. Words of this class are formed by adding *fold*, *-ble*, or *-ple*, as, *thricefold*, *double*, *triple*

74 Indefinite Numeral Adjectives do not denote any exact number, as, *all*, *any*, *certain*, *few*, *many*, *much*, *more*, *most*, *no*, *none*, *several*, *some*, &c

All, *any*, *much*, *no*, *none*, *some*, &c, denote either *number* or *bulk*, according to the sense

Any means (1) *one out of many*, as, "*Anybody* may enter," (2) *some*, as, "Did you see *any* soldiers?"

Few means *a small number*, and is opposed to *many*, as, "I have read *few* books." *A few* means *some*, and is opposed to *none*, as, "I read *a few* books." *The few* means *all* though a small number, as, "I have read *the few* books I possess." *Not a few* is emphatic for *many*

Several denotes a small number

None strictly means *not one*

Many although plural in meaning, may be joined with a singular noun preceded by *a*, as, *many a man*. Each is supposed to be taken singly

A definite numeral adjective is made indefinite by prefixing *some*, as, "*Some thirty* years had elapsed,"—*i.e.*, about that time, more or less

75 Distributive Numeral Adjectives denote that things are taken one at a time. They are *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*, *several*, *other*

Each, *every*, *either*, *neither* are joined to singular nouns

Each means *two or more things taken one by one*

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

76 **Demonstrative Adjectives** point out the person or thing intended to be indicated, and limit the application of the noun to it. The principal demonstratives are *a* or *an*, *the*, *this*, *that*, *yon*, *yonder*, *such*

A, or *an*, and *the* are called **ARTICLES**, and are often classed as a separate part of speech

77 *A*, or *an*, is called the **Indefinite Article**, because it does *not* point out *a particular* person or thing, as, *a* book, that is, *any* book

The is called the **Definite Article**, because it points out *some one particular* person or thing, as, *the* king, that is, the king of our *own* country, or the king that we are speaking about

A and *an* were originally *æ* and *anæ*, meaning *one*, as, *æ* man, *anæ* angel. They still express oneness, but not at all forcibly. They are properly numeral adjectives

The is a weaker form of *that*

78 *A* is used before a *consonant*, as, *a* man. *An* is used before a *vowel*, or silent *h*, as, *an* age, *an* hour

A is used before the long sound of *u*, and before *v* and *y*, as, *a* unit, *a* ewe, *a* week, *a* year. We also say, such *a* *one*. *An* is used before words beginning with *h* sounded, when the accent is on the second syllable, as *an* heroic action, *an* historical account

A or *an* is employed according as the one or the other is more pleasing to the ear when pronounced along with the word which follows

79 As a general rule, the article is placed before common nouns in the *Singular*, and left out before proper nouns, thus, "I saw horse," ought to be, "I saw *a* (or *the*) horse," "He went to the Calcutta," ought to be, "He went to Calcutta." A noun without an article is generally taken in its widest sense, as, *Man* is mortal, that is, *all mankind*

Proper and abstract nouns used as common, have articles placed before them, as, "The Himalayas", "The industry of Krishna"

✓ 80 A, or an, is used before nouns in the singular number only The is used before nouns in both numbers

A is used before the *plural* in nouns preceded by such phrases as, *a few, a great many*, as *a few books* *a great many apples*

In the phrase "*The more I know him*" *the* is an adverb representing a different word equal to *by that*

A fuller account of the use of the articles is given under SYNTAX (§ 256—274)

✓ 81 The demonstrative adjectives, this and that, have plural forms, these and those

This and these are applied to persons or things near at hand, or last named, that and those to persons or things at a distance in time or place

That is a relative pronoun when it can be turned into *who* or *which*, a demonstrative adjective when it is placed immediately before a noun expressed or understood—or when its place can be supplied by *the*

Yon and yonder are applied to things at a distance They are now mostly confined to poetry Yonder is properly an adverb

Such means *so like, like that*

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

✓ 82 Adjective Pronouns, or Pronominal¹ Adjectives, are so called, because they can be used either as adjectives *with* the noun, or as pronouns *for* the noun

They include the Demonstratives, *this* and *that*, the Interrogatives,² *which* ? *what* ? the Distributives, *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*, and the Possessives, *my*, *thy*, *his*, etc They will be studied under PRONOUNS

ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

83 Adjectives are sometimes used as nouns, as, the *pure*, the *deep*

In some cases nouns may be understood, as, *pure persons*, the *deep sea* But adjectives are changed into nouns when they can be used without nouns, or can be varied by number and case The following are

¹ Belonging to or of the nature of a pronoun

² Asking questions

some examples —the Bengali language, he speaks Bengali, a Bengali
In the first example Bengali is an adjective, in the others it is a noun
So with the following —a noble king, he is a noble, a noble's
privileges, the nobles held out

Abstract nouns are sometimes formed from adjectives by placing the definite article before them, as, the *true* for truth, the *beautiful* for beauty

The following are other examples of adjectives used as nouns *secrets, solids, liquids, valuables, natives, mortals*

PARSING OF ADJECTIVES

84 Adjectives are parsed by mentioning their class, their inflexions, and their relation to other words Thus He is *a wiser* man than his brother

A, demonstrative adjective, called the indefinite article, belonging to the noun *man*

Wiser, adjective of quality, comparative of wise, qualifying *man*

EXERCISE XII

Parse fully *the adjectives and nouns in the following sentences* —

1 The ripest fruit first falls Of two evils choose the less Yonder tree is very high This flower is the loveliest of all That green dress is for my younger sister These mangoes are not yet ripe The young boy was braver than his elder brother He brought me several books, some old, some new The old father was happier than his foolish son Both boys claimed the prize, but it was not given to either We have money enough for such a short journey He was the most famous poet of ancient times A Russian traveller crossed the highest mountain of the range Open rebuke is better than secret love That general was the greatest soldier of his age Storm and rain have made havoc of the crops It is an ill wind that blows nobody any good He that saith to the wicked Thou art righteous, him shall the people abhor Swimming is a healthy exercise I was not the only person who saw everything that went on

Write sentences *showing the difference in meaning between each and either, all and every, this and that, older, oldest, and elder, eldest*

THE PRONOUN

85 A **Pronoun** is a word used in place of a noun as Govind is not here, *he* is in the playground

One use of pronouns is to prevent the repetition of nouns. Instead of "Rama lost Rama's book when Rama was going to Rama's home," we say, "Rama lost his book when he was going to his home." They also serve other purposes. Some pronouns have the force of conjunctions connecting sentences.

A word is not a pronoun unless it is used as a substitute for a noun or for the equivalent of a noun. In "this book," "that book," *this* and *that* are properly adjectives.

As the pronoun stands for a noun, it always refers to something which has been named or is immediately to be named. It must also be of the same number, gender and person as the noun for which it stands.

The principal classes of Pronouns are **Personal, Demonstrative, Relative, and Interrogative**

Adjective, Reflexive, Indefinite, Distributive, and Reciprocal Pronouns are other classes.

86 **Personal Pronouns** are so called because they stand for the *person* speaking, spoken to, or spoken of. There are three persons, viz. —

The **First Person**, which denotes the person *speaking*, as *I*, *we*, &c.

The **Second Person**, which denotes the person *spoken to*, as, *thou*, *you*, &c.

The **Third Person**, which denotes the person or thing *spoken of*, as, *he*, *she*, *it*.

The pronouns *I* and *thou* imply that one person is speaking to another. Strictly they are the only *personal* pronouns.

He, *she*, and *it* are rather *demonstrative* than *personal* pronouns.

There is distinction of *gender* only in the pronouns of the third person. The *speaker* and the *person spoken to* do not need to be told each other's sex.

Pronouns have retained more of the old inflexions than either nouns or adjectives.

DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

87 The Personal Pronouns are thus declined —

First Person (*Masc* or *Fem*)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nominative</i>	I	We
<i>Possessive</i>	My or Mine	Our or Ours
<i>Objective</i>	Me	Us

Second Person (*Masc* or *Fem*)

<i>Nominative</i>	Thou	Ye or You
<i>Possessive</i>	Thy or Thine	Your or Yours
<i>Objective</i>	Thee	You

Third Person

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	<i>Masc</i>	<i>Fem</i>	<i>Neu</i>	<i>All Genders</i>
<i>Nom</i>	He	She	It	They
<i>Poss</i>	His	Her or Hers	Its	Their or Theirs
<i>Oby</i>	Him	Her	It	Them

88 *Thou* is seldom used except in poetry and prayer. Applied to a person, it generally expresses contempt. *You* is used in the singular as a mark of respect. It should have a *plural* verb, as, *You* are a wise man. *Ye* is an old form, now used chiefly in poetry.

In Old English *je* was used as a nominative, and *you* as a dative or accusative. In the English Bible, this distinction is carefully observed.

89 It is often applied to living beings whose sex is not marked, as, *infant, dog, ant*.

It may be used not only in place of the name of an object, but instead of a clause of a sentence, as, *To learn his lessons well* is the scholar's duty, or, *It* is the scholar's duty to learn his lessons well. In such expressions as, *It rains, It freezes, It* does not stand for either a noun or a clause of a sentence, but is used to point out the effect of some cause not mentioned.

✓ 90 The possessive cases of most of the personal pronouns have two forms

My, thy, her, our, your, their are used when placed *before* their nouns, as, *My* book, *her* slate

Mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs are used—

(1) When the noun is understood, as, Here is my book, where is *yours*?

(2) When a verb comes between noun and pronoun, as, *I*ours is the gain, *mine* the loss

(3) When the pronoun is preceded by of, as, That house of *yours* is convenient

Hers, ours, yours, theirs, are double possessives, both the r and the s being possessive terminations. Of ours, &c., is a kind of three-fold possessive

The apostrophe should not be used with *hers, its, ours yours, theirs* *Whose yours, not your's*

91 The word *own* is sometimes added to the possessive case to render it more emphatic or forcible, as, It is *your own* fault

✓ 92 The word *self* is added to the possessive case of the first and second personal pronouns and the objective case of the third to form Reflexive Pronouns. The plural pronouns take the plural form *selves*. Thus we have—*myself, ourselves, thyself, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Reflexive comes from a word meaning to *bend back*. Reflexive pronouns denote the coming back of an action upon the doer. They are used when a person *does something to or for himself*, as, "I hurt *myself*"

Formerly the pronoun was used reflectively without *self*, as, "I can buy *me* what I want"

Reflexive pronouns are also used for emphasis, as, "*He himself* did it". They have only the nominative and objective cases, which are alike in form

When *own* is added to emphasize these reflexive forms it comes before *self*, and in the third person the possessive form of the personal pronoun is used instead of the objective, as, *my own self, your own selves, his own self, their own selves*

EXERCISE XIII

Give the number, gender, and case of the following pronouns —

They, hers, mine, yours, she, him, thine, us, he, me, thou, I, thee, their, its, theirs, you, her, ours, his, it

Give the person, gender, number, and case of the personal pronouns in the following sentences, and mention the nouns for which they stand —

My brother's horse is lame, so he has sent it out to graze. As Rama and Hari could not say their lessons, they must repeat them to-morrow. Govind and I are going out, but we shall return soon. Take this food to the boys, and tell them that I brought it for them. Mary has been very good, so she will be allowed to visit her aunt. James hurt himself when he was playing. "Can you not understand that I must keep my word," he cried to the crowd, but they answered him with hisses. "My name is John," said his companion, "but you need not tell me yours unless you like."

Parse the following sentences —

Is this your book? That book is yours. My dog is gentle, it will not bite you. I myself saw him. Is the field ours? Wish yourselves before you leave. I am yours obediently. Let them come themselves if they wish for their money. This land is not theirs. Is it your own property?

Supply the pronouns which are omitted in the following sentences —

She brought me — copy. After the servants had done — work, the master sent — away. You should not take Rama's mango. It is —, not —. Take this letter and post —. Govind is waiting, tell — to come in. A tree is known by — fruit. The Count and Countess at first took — servants with —, but on the second day of — journey the Count sent — men back, and on the third day the Countess sent — mules. Shortly after, one of — horses fell lame, and — stopped to have — attended to. As — had no servant the Count — went to seek the firrier. On the way — met a man who asked — where — was going. — replied that — horse had fallen lame and — was going to seek the firrier. "Don't go to that man," said —, "— is no use. Let — see the horse and I will attend to —."

Correct — They divided the books between him and I. You and us will go. Did you mean him to do it himself? He will not find fault with you and I.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

93 'A Demonstrative Pronoun is so called because it points back to some noun going before it, and instead of which it is used. This noun is its antecedent —

✓The principal demonstrative pronouns are *he, she, it, they, this, that, these, those, one, ones, none, and such* —

94 He, she, and it are generally called Personal Pronouns, because they point out the third person as distinct from the first and second, but they are properly *demonstrative pronouns* —

It may refer either to a noun or clause going before, or to a phrase or clause coming after as His chance was gone, and he knew *it*, It is very likely that he will be here

95 This refers to something near at hand or last mentioned, that to something at a distance or not last mentioned

Both this and that may have a backward reference but when they are used together this refers to the nearer and that to the more distant antecedent, as, "He tried both to capture the fort and to join the main force, *this* he accomplished, but *that* was beyond his power"

This and that, with their plurals these and those, are adjectives when they are followed by a noun or require some noun to be understood after them, as I take *this* place, you take *that*—*place* understood They are pronouns when they are used instead of nouns previously mentioned, and cannot have nouns after them, as, "To be or not to be—*that* is the question"

✓96 One is the adjective *one* used as a pronoun. None is a shortened form of *not one*. It is used when the noun to which it refers is omitted

One is used in the plural as well as the singular "If you want a knife I have some good *ones*" None does not admit of a plural form, and yet it is quite commonly and correctly used with plural verbs "As to snakes in Iceland, there are *none*"

97 Such is used as a pronoun when it stands for a noun, as, If you are a friend, show yourself *such*. It may be used for either number

98 Indefinite Demonstrative Pronouns Some demonstratives may be used in an *indefinite sense*, i.e., without reference to any express antecedent Such are, they, it, one, another, &c., as, Is *it* John? No, *it* is James *It* is very late *They* say the King is coming *One* may do what *one* likes with *one's* own Do not laugh at *another's* pain

EXERCISE XIV

Parse the following sentences, distinguishing Adjectives from Pronouns —

None but the brave deserve the fair One can hardly believe his statement This is yours, that is mine There is none that doeth good, no, not one That is not to be touched He took the one, I took the other Some men are better than others Such as go down to the sea This box is larger than that Bear ye one another's burdens It was such a night as this Let another praise thee, and not thine own mouth This book belongs to that boy Both were young, but one was beautiful This is a fine house

Make three sentences showing the use of the pronoun one

Make sentences containing the pronouns none, other, another, such

RELATIVE OR CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

99 A Relative Pronoun is so called because it *relates*, or *refers*, to an Antecedent It is called a *conjunctive pronoun* because it also joins sentences or parts of sentences together like a conjunction, as, The student *who* passed is here

Relative comes from a word meaning *carried back* A relative pronoun carries back our thoughts to its antecedent noun in the sentence Demonstrative pronouns also have antecedents, but they have no conjunctive force

100 The Relative Pronouns are who, which, that, and what As and but are also employed as relatives

Relative pronouns have the singular and plural alike
Who is either masculine or feminine, *that* is masculine, feminine or neuter, *which* is now neuter, *what*, as a relative pronoun, is always neuter

That and *what* are not varied by case *Who* and *which* are thus declined —

Sing and *Plur*

Nom *Who*

Poss *Whose*

Obj *Whom*

Sing and *Plur*

Nom *Which*

Poss *Whose*

Obj *Which*

101 *Who* is used of persons, as, The man *who* came
Which is used of the lower animals and things without life, as, The dog *which* barks, the book *which* was lost

Which was formerly used like *who*, as, Our Father *which* art in heaven

102 *That* is applied both to persons and things

That is now used instead of *who* or *which*

(a) After the superlative degree of adjectives, as, This is the best picture *that* I ever saw

(b) After two antecedents, one requiring *who* and the other *which*, as The boy and the dog *that* you saw

(c) As the restrictive, limiting or defining relative, as, The book *that* I bought is lost

103 *Who* or *which* connects two co-ordinate¹ or independent sentences, as, I met a man *who* told me, Take care of the book, *which* will be of great use to you

They have thus a *continuative* force *Who* and *which* are also sometimes used in a way which implies *cause* or *purpose* "An officer was sent *who* should examine the matter," (= that he might examine) "The entire wall, *which* was undermined, fell with a crash," (= because it was undermined)

104 *What* is equal to *that which* It is used only for things It is used when the antecedent is omitted, as, This is *what* he wanted (= the thing that)

¹ Holding the same rank—not depending on another

105 Who, which, and what are combined with *so* and *ever* to form **Compound Relatives**, as, whoso, whoever, whosoever, whatsoever and whichsoever

✓ 106 As is used as a relative after *such*, *as*, and *same* It is applied to both persons and things, as, Should such a man as I flee? As many as I saw His book is the same as mine A ~~over~~

After *such* and *as*, *as* must be used After *same*, *that* may often be used "This is the same mistake that you made yesterday"

107 But is a relative when it means *that not* It is used after *no*, *not*, *none*, or other negative It is sometimes called the **Negative Relative**, as, There was no woman *but* wept There is no language so difficult *but* may be mastered

108 When, where, whence, with their compounds, are sometimes used as relative pronouns, as, "That was *when* I was young," "This is *where* I found it," "He returned to the place *whence* he came" When so used they are called **Adverbial Relatives**

EXERCISE XV

Point out the relative pronouns and their antecedents in the following sentences —

He met the man whom I saw yesterday We cannot always get what we wish He returned the book which I lent him Avoid the faults into which you see others fall He whom thou lovest is sick A boy who is attentive is sure to excel Attend to what is told you Name the places through which you passed Solomon was the wisest man that ever lived

Such water as we found was brackish We came across no stream so deep but we could ford it Can there be as great a monster as you have described? He is just the same as ever The dog that was lost has been found He is not such a good scholar as I expected Do not be friends with such as think lightly of lying

Supply the omitted pronouns in the following sentences —

He has forgotten — he said yesterday That man is not a friend — I can trust There were none present — pitied him Avoid such — think lightly of the truth This is the boy — gained the prize He gets — he asks Is that the man — name is so honoured? These are the books — I bought He undertook — he could not perform There is no one — knows my business Consider well — your answer should be

Make two sentences showing the difference between who and which

Make three sentences with that as a relative

Make two sentences with what as a relative

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS, &c

109 The Interrogative Pronouns are **who**, **which**, **what**, and **whether** They are used in asking questions

Interrogative means asking questions

Who is applied to *persons*, and is *indefinite* "Who did it?" supposes complete ignorance of the person

Which applies to *persons* as well as *things* It refers to one out of a definite number, as, "Which will you have?"

What is applied to *things*, and is *indefinite*, as, "What did you get?"

Whether is applied to either persons or things, and means *which of the two*, as, "Whether is easier?"

The Interrogative **who** may be used in the *possessive* case, and also in the *objective* after *of*, as, "Whose voice do I hear?" (the answer must be in the possessive—John's) "Of whom is this true?" (Answer—of John)

What is also used as an exclamatory pronoun, as, "What a silly boy!" "What abundance!"

When **what** refers to persons, it is followed by a noun, as, **What** man said so?

Who is he? asks a person's name, &c

Which is he? asks that the person meant may be pointed out

What is he? asks a person's employment, &c

110 Whoever, whichever, and whatever, are Compound Interrogatives

Ever added to the interrogatives not only gives the idea of universality, as in the case of the relative, but also often serves to express surprise, &c, making the words almost *exclamatory pronouns*. Thus, *Whoever told you so?* = Who told you so? I am amazed that anyone should have done so, *Whatever are you doing?* = What are you doing? You seem to me to be doing some extraordinary thing

111 The DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERAL ADJECTIVES, each, every, either, neither, are sometimes used as pronouns

Distributive, as already explained, denotes that things are taken one at a time. They are adjectives when they qualify nouns, and pronouns when used instead of nouns

112 RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS denote acting in return. They are each other and one another

Reciprocal means *backward and forward*

Each other properly refers to *two* persons or things, as, Ram and Govind loved *each other*

One another refers to *more than two* persons or things, as, The boys pelted *one another*

PARSING OF PRONOUNS

113 In parsing Pronouns give (1) *the kind*, (2) *person*, (3) *number*, (4) *gender*, (5) *case*, (6) *the relation* to other words of the sentence

"We saw the person whom you named"

We—First personal pronoun, plural, common gender, nominative, subject to the verb *saw*

Saw—Verb

The—Definite article, qualifying *person*

Person—Noun, common, singular, common gender, objective, governed by *saw*

Whom—Relative pronoun, singular, common gender, agreeing with its antecedent *person*, objective, governed by *named*

You—Second personal pronoun, plural, common gender, nominative, subject to the verb *named*

Named—Verb

EXERCISE XVI

Parse the pronouns in the following sentences —

Is that book yours? Yes, my uncle gave it me. Whom shall we ask to help us? They shared each other's sorrows. Whose is this image? Be ours the praise, be theirs the shame. Govind, who was at school, wrote a letter to his father. This is what I wanted. What did he wish? These are all the exercises which were written. Every heart knows its own sorrows. The children played with each other in the fields near our house. You must prepare yourself for your examination. The dog is theirs, I cannot tell what it is become of it.

Insert pronouns in the following —

You — learn. The books — we read. — pen is this? — do you like? — discovered America? — is it good for? — is that man? Whether do you wish — or —? Do not say — you know to be untrue. The two brothers should seek — — good. Is — the man — I sent for? To — did you give the bird? — I bought? — mangoes are these? I know — were present, and — was said.

Make three sentences with who as a relative pronoun, and three with who as an interrogative pronoun.

Make three sentences with what as a relative pronoun, and three with what as an interrogative pronoun.

Make four sentences containing demonstrative pronouns, and four containing indefinite pronouns.

THE VERB

114. A Sentence is any number of words having a full meaning, as, Dogs bark.

Every sentence consists of two parts—the Subject and the Predicate.

The Subject is the person or thing spoken of.

The Predicate is what is said about the subject.

Thus in the sentence, "Dogs bark," Dogs is the subject, and bark the predicate. The predicate is always a verb.

115 A VERB is a word which declares or tells something

Verb comes from the Latin *verbum*, a *word*. It is so called because it is the most important word in a sentence. It is emphatically *the* word, there can be no sentence without a verb.

116 *That which is spoken of, is the Subject of the Verb*
That to which something is done, is the Object

To find the subject, put *who* or *what* before the verb, the answer will be the subject. To find the object, put *whom* or *what* after the verb.

A verb declares of its subject that *it does something*, or *has something done to it*, or that *it is something*.

117 Verbs are divided into two great classes,—Transitive and Intransitive

✓ A Transitive Verb denotes action passing from the *doer* to an *object*, as, He *struck* the table.

✓ An Intransitive Verb expresses an action that does not go beyond the *doer*, as, We *walk*.

Transitive means *going beyond*. *Intransitive* means *not transitive, not going beyond*.

118 Some transitive verbs may become intransitive by expressing the action *generally*, as, Fire *burns*, I *hear*.

Some intransitive verbs are turned into transitive by adding prepositions to them, as, She *laughed at* him.

Verbs of this class are sometimes called Prepositional Verbs.

119 Some transitive verbs take *two* objects after them, one of the *thing* and one of the *person*, distinguished as the *direct* and *indirect* objects.

In the sentence, "I gave *him* a *rupee*," the *direct* object is *rupee*, *him* is the *indirect* object. The prepositions *to* or *for* are generally understood. The indirect object always comes *first*, unless the preposition is expressed. The above sentence might run, "I gave a rupee to him," but not "I gave a rupee him."

120 Incomplete Verbs are those which require some other word to give a complete sense, as, *be*, *seem*, *become*, *appear* &c.

"He seems" does not express a complete sense. A noun, adjective, or other words, in apposition with the subject is required, as, He seems a stranger. The word or words thus added are called the complement of the verb, because they complete the verbal idea or predication.

121 **Factitive Verbs** are *transitive* verbs which also require a complement to complete their predication, as, The loss filled us *with grief*, They set him *free*. In these sentences the verbal idea is contained in the words "filled with grief" and "set free," as may be seen by writing them thus,— "The loss *grieved* us," "They *freed* him."

122 The complement of a *transitive* verb of incomplete predication is called an Objective Complement because it refers to the object, the complement of an *intransitive* verb is a Subjective Complement, because it refers to the subject. "He seemed *glad* that they had made *him king*."

EXERCISE XVII.

Say whether the following Verbs are transitive, intransitive, or incomplete —

Gopal runs. The man shot a crow. Krishna spoke quickly. The girl reads her book. He laughed at it. Bring the book. She requested two days to complete the work. He rode on a white horse. We commenced yesterday. Govind broke the chair. Tea grows in Assam. The wind blows strongly. He looks a king. The poor man broke his leg. She is a teacher. Boys learn their lessons. He became great. We made game of him. My aunt asked us to dinner. When the gun was fired the horse took fright. Without perseverance you cannot make your business a success. The vessel rode at anchor in the harbour. Make haste! Learn to do well. Trust in God and do the right. A fox one day saw some grapes which hung upon a branch which was a good way from the ground. He tried to get them by jumping as high as he could. But as he could not reach them he turned away saying, "They are sour, I could not eat them if I had them."

Write six sentences having Transitive verbs, six with Intransitive verbs, and three with Incomplete verbs

INFLECTIONS OF THE VERB

123 Verbs are inflected for Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person

VOICE

124 (VOICE shows whether the subject of a verb acts or is acted upon)

There are two Voices—the Active and Passive ~

The Active Voice denotes that the subject of the verb acts, as, He *wrote* a letter ~

The Passive Voice denotes that the subject of the verb is acted upon, as, A letter *was written* by him ;

Passive comes from a Latin word which means *to suffer*

The *object* in the active voice becomes the *subject* in the passive voice

125 When the *agent* is chiefly noticed, the *active* voice is used, and when the *object*, the *passive* voice

There are no inflections in English that show the passive voice To make the change, the verb “to be” is needed, which is therefore called an *auxiliary* or helping verb The word denoting the agent in the passive voice has the word *by* before it, either expressed or understood

126 Verbs which take *two* objects after them in the active voice (§ 120) can take *one* in the passive, as

Active

I gave him a rupee

Passive

A rupee was given him by me,

He was given a rupee by me

127 When a Factitive verb is changed from the active voice to the passive the objective complement becomes a subjective one, as

Active

They made him *King*

Passive

He was made *King* by them

128 Intransitive verbs have no object, and therefore have no passive voice

But intransitive verbs with prepositions, used as transitives, have the passive voice as, He was *troughed* at by all

EXERCISE XVIII

*Change the verbs in the following sentences from the
Active to the Passive voice —*

I called him Cain killed Abel He stole a mango She loves her father
~~I saw an owl~~ He rang the bell A snake bit the man Hari brought a chair
John wrote a letter Our habits make us slaves He showed him his lessons
She gave us some mangoes We promised him five rupees
A cloud hid the sun The soldier saw the sick man stumble and fall
Napoleon often defeated the Russians, but at last the Russians defeated him

*Change the verbs in the following sentences from the
Passive to the Active voice —*

Rama was beaten by Govind The English were conquered by the Normans
Many have been ruined by gambling Such mistakes are made by beginners
The remainder was devoured by vultures The slate was broken by Krishna
War was declared against France by Prussia Rama's bullock was killed by a tiger
A present was bought for him by his father Night was made hideous by their howls
The tank will be completed by the government engineers Your rice should have been pounded by the servant

MOOD

129 Mood shows the *mode* or *manner* of the action expressed by the verb

There are four moods — Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive. To these may be added the Gerund and the Participle

130 The Indicative Mood simply declares a thing, or it asks a question; as, He *runs*, He *will come*, Who *knows*?

Indicative means *pointing out*

131 The Subjunctive Mood is so called because it is chiefly used in clauses *subjoined* to the principal clause of the sentence. It states a thing as a *condition* or *supposition*, and does not make a statement of *fact*, as, I will go, *if he come* *were* he here, he would tell you

Subjunctive means *joined under*. Uncertainty is generally implied. It usually follows such words as *if, unless, though, lest, &c.*, but these are not a part of the verb. Its use is dying out in modern English.

132 The Imperative Mood commands, advises, or entreats, as, *Do this, Forgive and forget. Spare his life.*

Imperative means *commanding*.

The Imperative is the root of the verb from which the other parts are derived.

133 The Infinitive Mood simply names the action, and is not limited by time, person, or number, as, *To write.*

Infinitive means *without end*. It is not properly a *mood*, but is a verb used as a noun. The preposition *to* is usually prefixed, and is hence called the *sign*, or *mark*, of the infinitive. It may be either in the nominative or in the objective case.

The name **Potential Mood** has been given to such forms as, *He can read, She may go*, but it is now generally given up. *Can* is in the indicative, *read* is in the infinitive. *To* is left out after *can, may, &c.* *Potential* means *having power*.

134 The Infinitive of Purpose is called the **Gerundial Infinitive**, as, *He came to learn*. The verbal noun ending in *-ing* is also called the **Gerund**, as, *Gambling* is hurtful.

The word **Gerund** means *carrying on*. It denotes the doing of that which the verb signifies.

135 The Participle is so called because it partakes of the properties of the verb and the adjective, as, *I saw a boy running*.

Participle means *sharing taking part*. As verbs, participles imply action, as adjectives, they qualify nouns. Participles are *verbal adjectives*. Gerunds are *verbal nouns*. Nouns in *-ing* must be distinguished from participles in *-ing*, a large *building* (noun), *building* a house (participle).

In Old English the present participle and the gerund had distinct endings,—present participle, *writende* *writing*, gerund, *writung*. In later English these two suffixes, *ende* and *-ung* were merged into one *-ing*, and now there is only one form for both parts of the verb, as, *I am writing* (Present Participle), *Writing* is useful (Gerund).

EXERCISE

Name the Voices and Moods of the verbs in the following sentences —

Do it yourself To err is human, to forgive, divine I found him reading Are you fond of writing letters? If I go, I will let you know Let him not despond Forbear to trouble yourself about trifles I would help you if I could Had you been present, I should have seen you I hear that you broke it The governor refused to comply I hate lying You can send him If that happened, it was a great misfortune Giving is better than receiving He can do it if he likes They came to see the show I saw him running away If he were here I should ask him Rama was taught reading and writing We should hate lying I saw him breaking stones Seeing for himself the damage done by the flood, he decided to have the dykes strengthened Learn to act for yourself Much that you say was known to me If he comes by train he will arrive in the morning I like travelling by coach Riding slowly, I reached home just as the sun was setting Step aside and speak to the poor fellow

Make four sentences each containing a Gerund, and other four each containing a Participle.

TENSE

136 TENSE is a change in the verb to express time

Tense comes from a word meaning time

There are three great divisions of time—Present, Past, Future The name Tense is given to the different forms of verbs which denote them

The verb is the only kind of word which by its own forms can point out time

137 The English verb has only two tenses formed by inflection,—the Present and Past. The Future is formed by the help of other verbs

The Present Tense denotes that the action is going on now, as, I love, I am loving

The Past Tense denotes that the action took place, or was going on, in time past as, I saw him, He was walking

The **Future Tense** denotes that the action is yet to take place. It is formed by means of the verbs *shall* or *will*, followed by the infinitive, as, I shall go, he will go

138 Each tense has three forms

(1) An action simply mentioned is said to be **Indefinite**, as, I *love*, I *loved*, I *shall love*

(2) An action mentioned as still going on is said to be **Imperfect**. It is formed by means of the verb *be* and the imperfect participle, as, I *am loving*, I *was loving*, I *shall be loving*

Progressive (moving forward), **Incomplete** (not complete), and **Continuous** (proceeding), are other names for the imperfect

(3) An action mentioned as finished is said to be **Perfect**. It is formed by means of the verb *have* and the perfect participle, as, I *have loved*, I *had loved*, I *shall have loved*

139 The **Present Perfect** denotes that the action has just now been completed, as, I *have dined*

It is a common mistake in India to use the present perfect instead of the past indefinite as, "I have seen him yesterday," instead of, "I saw him yesterday." Unless the action has just been completed, or if the time is mentioned, the past indefinite should be used, as, I have just seen him, I saw him an hour ago

The **Past Perfect**, also called **Pluperfect**, denotes that the action was completed before another action took place, as, I *had seen* him before I met you

Pluperfect means *more than perfect*. The past perfect should not be used unless the other action is mentioned, as, "I had seen him yesterday," ought to be, "I saw him yesterday"

The **Future Perfect** denotes that the action will be completed before another future action takes place, as, I *shall have left* before you return

140 The active voice has a fourth form, called the **Perfect Continuous**. It expresses an action going on up to the present time as, I *have been writing*

It is also called the Perfect Progressive or Perfect Incomplete. It combines the meaning of the imperfect and perfect.

TABLE OF TENSES (*Active Voice*)

TENSE	<i>Indefinite</i>	<i>Imperfect or Continuous</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Perfect Continuous</i>
Present	I love	I am loving	I have loved	I have been loving
Past	I loved	I was loving	I had loved	I had been loving
Future	I shall love	I shall be loving	I shall have loved	I shall have been loving

EXERCISE XX

Point out the Verbs in the following sentences and name their Moods and Tenses —

I shall send it to-morrow. You asked me what I was doing. I had filled it before it burst. I shall have great pleasure in going with you. He met me when I was walking. I shall have completed it before to-morrow. We have written that we are coming. If you should see Krishna, tell him that I want to speak to him. Shall I come down, and will you give me leave? If the sick man be sleeping, do not wake him. You came to ask me what I have been doing. It would have mattered little if he had not spoken harshly. You need not urge me, I intend to do it. If he had known how to manage the machine, such an accident could not have happened. Do not act without thought.

Correct the following where necessary —

Last month I have bought a house. Is this correct? There had been a storm yesterday. I went to see him in the evening. I have spent all my money before I have received your letter. The mail has not yet arrived. He had studied for six months before he left. I have arrived this morning. I had seen him do it. The King has been crowned this year. The fleet should be assembled a week ago. The swallows had left before the winter begins.

NUMBER AND PERSON

141 The verb, like the noun, has two NUMBERS, **Singular** and **Plural**, as, *He loves, they love*

Distinct forms for the plural are found only in the verb to be, as, *I am, we are, I was, we were*

142 **PERSON** is a change in the Verb, according as its subject is the speaker, the person or persons spoken to, or the person or thing spoken of, as, *I love, first person, Thou lovest, second person, He speaks, third person*

The plural has no endings to mark Person The person is known by the subject

143 The **PRESENT TENSE** of the verb *bring* is thus inflected —

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>1st Per</i>	<i>I bring</i>	<i>1st Per</i>	<i>We bring</i>
<i>2nd Per</i>	<i>Thou bringest</i>	<i>2nd Per</i>	<i>You bring</i>
<i>3rd Per</i>	<i>He brings or bringeth</i>	<i>3rd Per</i>	<i>They bring</i>

The pronouns are no part of the verb The second person singular (thou bringest, thou lovest), is seldom used except in poetry In ordinary language the plural form (you bring, you love) takes its place The third person singular present has *s*, or *es*, and the old form *eth*, which is now confined to poetry These endings belong only to the indicative mood

CONJUGATIONS

144 The giving of the moods, tenses, and other parts of a verb is called its **CONJUGATION**

Conjugation means *joining*, or *joining together*

145 Verbs are divided into **Strong** and **Weak** verbs, according to the way in which they form the past indefinite tense

146 A **Strong** verb forms the past tense by changing the vowel of the present tense Nothing is *added* to the pre-

sent to make it past. Thus, in *write*, *wrote*, the vowel is changed, but nothing is added. Strong verbs are sometimes said to belong to the *Old* conjugation.

147 A Weak verb forms the past by adding *d*, *ed* or *t* to the present. Thus, *love*, *loved*, *spend*, *spent*. Weak verbs are sometimes said to belong to the *New*, or *Modern*, conjugation.

Some weak verbs seem to belong to the strong conjugation, because they change the vowel, as, *teach*, *taught*, *seek*, *sought*, *say*, *said*, but they are weak because they add *d* or *t* for the past tense. There are also weak verbs which change the vowel, and make no addition, as, *meet*, *met*, *feed*, *fed*. Such verbs in Old English had terminations which have been lost.

Weak verbs are sometimes divided into Irregular Weak verbs, like *beseech*, *besought*, and Regular Weak verbs, like, *love*, *loved*.

Verbs which form the past tense by adding *d*, *ed* or *t* are sometimes called Regular verbs. Those which do not thus form the past tense are said to be Irregular. Though not strictly correct, the distinction is much more easily understood than that between strong and weak verbs.

148 Some verbs have both forms. Thus, *shear*, *shore*, *shorn*, has also *sheared*, *shear'd*.

LIST OF STRONG VERBS

149 Formerly the past participle of these verbs was always formed by adding -*n*, *en*, or *ne*, in some this termination has been lost. Verbs to which *t* is prefixed have also weak forms. The past participles which are distinguished by an asterisk (***) are now never used in the formation of tenses, and are *verbal adjectives* only. The past tenses printed in italics are old forms now seldom used, save in poetry.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>
Abide	abode	abode	Bear	{ bore,	} born
Arise	arose	arisen		{ bare	
Awake	awoke	awoke		(bring forth)	

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>
Bear (carry)	{ bore, bare }	{ borne }	Go	went	gone
Beat	beat	beaten	Grind	ground	ground
Become	became	become	Grow	grew	grown
Beget	{ begat begot }	{ begot begotten }	Hang	hung	hung
Begin	began	begun	Hide	hid	{ hidden,* hid }
Behold	beheld	{ beheld (beholden)† }	Hold	held	held
Bid	{ bade, bid }	{ bidden, bid }	Know	knew	known
Bind	bound	{ bounden* bound }	Lie	lay	lain
Bite	bit	bitten, bit	Ride	rode	ridden
Blow	blew	blown	Ring	rang	rung
Break	{ broke, brake }	{ broken }	Rise	rose	risen
Chide	chid	{ chidden, chid }	Run	ran	run
Choose	chose	chosen	See	saw	seen
Cleave	{ clove, cleft, clave }	{ cloven,* cleft }	Seethe	sod	sodden
Cling	clung	clung	Shake	shook	shaken
Come	came	come	Shave	shaved	shaven
Dig	dug	dug	Shear	{ sheared shore }	{ shorn }
Do	did	done	Shine	shone	shone
Draw	drew	drawn	Shoot	shot	shot
Drink	drank	{ drunk, drunken* }	Show	showed	shown
Drive	{ drove drave }	{ driven }	Shrink	shrank	{ shrunk, shrunken* }
Eat	ate	eaten	Sing	sang	sung
Fall	fell	fallen	Sink	sank	{ sunk, sunken* }
Fight	fought	fought	Sit	sat	sat
Find	found	found	Slay	slew	slain
Fling	flung	flung	Slide	slid	{ slidden, slid }
Fly	flew	flown	Sling	slung	slung
Forbear	forbore	forborne	Slink	slunk	slunk
Forbid	forbade	forbidden	Sow	sowed	sown
Forget	{ forgot forgat }	{ forgotten }	Smite	smote	smitten
Forsake	forsook	forsaken	Speak	{ spoke spake }	{ spoken }
Freeze	froze	frozen	Spin	{ spun spin }	{ spun }
Get	got, gat	got, gotten*	Spit	spat	spat, spit
Give	gave	given	Spring	{ spring, sprung }	{ sprung }
			Stand	stood	stood
			Stave	stove	stove
			Steal	stole	stolen
			Stick	stuck	stuck
			Sting	stung	stung

† Beholden means indebted

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>
Stunk	stank	stunk	Tear	tore	torn
Stride	strode	stridden	Thrive	throve	thriven
Strike	struck	{ struck, stricken*	Throw	threw	thrown
String	strung	strung	Tread	trod	{ trodden, trod
Strive	strove	striven	Wake	woke	waked
Swear	{ swore swore	{ sworn	Wear	wore	worn
Swell	swelled	swollen	Weave	wove	woven
Swim	swam	swum	Win	won	won
Swing	swung	swung	Wind	wound	wound
Take	took	taken	Wring	wrung	wrung
			Write	wrote	written

LIST OF WEAK VERBS

150. The following verbs belong to the Weak Conjugation, in addition to the large class which form their past tense and past participle by adding -d or -ed

CLASS I

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>
Bereave	bereft	bereft	Hew	hewed	hewn
Beseech	besought	besought	Keep	kept	kept
Bleed	bled	bled	Kneel	knelt	knelt
Blend	blended	blent	Lay	laid	laid
Breed	bred	bred	Lead	led	led
Bring	brought	brought	Leap	leapt	leapt
Build	built	built	Learn	learnt	learnt
Burn	burnt	burnt	Leave	left	left
Buy	bought	bought	Lend	lent	lent
Catch	caught	caught	Light	lit	lit
Clothe	clad	clad	Load	loaded	laden
Creep	crept	crept	Lose	lost	lost
Crow	crew	crowed	Make	made	made
Curse	curst	curst	Mean	meant	meant
Dare	durst	dared	Meet	met	met
Deal	dealt	dealt	Melt	melted	molten
Dream	dreamt	dreamt	Mow	mowed	mown
Dwell	dwelt	dwelt	Prove	proved	proven
Feed	fed	fed	Reed	rent	rent
Feel	felt	felt	Rise	rised	riven
Flee	fled	fled	Saw	sawed	sawn
Gild	gilt	gilt	Say	said	said
Gird	girt	girt	Seek	sought	sought
Grave	graved	graven	Sell	sold	sold
Have	had	had	Send	sent	sent
Hear	heard	heard	Sew	sewed	sown

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>
Shave	shaved	shaven	Spill	spilt	spilt
Shoe	shod	shod	Strew	strewed	strewn
Show	showed	shown	Sweep	swept	swept
Sleep	slept	slept	Swell	swelled	swollen
Smell	smelt	smelt	Teach	taught	taught
Sow	sowed	sown	Tell	told	told
Speed	sped	sped	Think	thought	thought
Spell	spelt	spelt	Weep	wept	wept
Spend	spent	spent	Work	wrought	wrought

CLASS II

Verbs which have the three parts alike

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Part</i>
Bet	bet	bet	Rid	rid	rid
Burst	burst	burst	Set	set	set
Cast	cast	cast	Shed	shed	shed
Cost	cost	cost	Shred	shred	shred
Cut	cut	cut	Shut	shut	shut
Hit	hit	hit	Slit	slit	slit
Hurt	hurt	hurt	Split	split	split
Knit	knit	knit	Split	split	split
Let	let	let	Spread	spread	spread
Put	put	put	Thrust	thrust	thrust
Quit	quit	quit	Wed	wed	wed
Read	read	read			

CONJUGATION WITHOUT AUXILIARIES

151 The following is the inflection of the weak verb to love, without the help of other verbs —

<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Perfect Participle</i>
Love	Loved ¹	Loved

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
1	I love	1	We love
2	Thou lovest	2	You love
3	He loves	3	They love

Past Tense

1	I loved	1	We loved
2	Thou lovedst	2	You loved
3	He loved	3	They loved

¹ *Loved* is a short form of *love did*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

2	Love (thou)	2	Love (ye, or you)
---	-------------	---	-------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD

To love

GERUNDS

Loving

To love

PARTICIPLES

*Imperfect, Loving**Perfect, Loved*

152 The strong verb to write is thus inflected —

<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>	<i>Perfect Participle</i>
Write	Wrote	Written

INDICATIVE MOOD

*Present Tense**Singular*

1	I write
2	Thou writest
3	He writes

Plural

1	We write
2	You write
3	They write

Past Tense

1	I wrote
2	Thou wrotest
3	He wrote

1	We wrote
2	You wrote
3	They wrote

IMPERATIVE MOOD

2	Write (thou)	2	Write (ye, or you)
---	--------------	---	--------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD

To write

GERUNDS

Writing

To write

PARTICIPLES

*Imperfect, Writing**Perfect, Written*

The above are, strictly speaking, the only conjugations of the English verb, the other moods and tenses, which in Latin and other languages are formed by inflection, being formed by the aid of other verbs

The English verb has thus only a small number of inflections *Write* has seven forms *write, writest, writes, writing, written, wrote, wrotest* Regular verbs have only six forms *love, lovest, loves, loved, lovedst, loving*

EXERCISE XXI

Conjugate the verbs serve, call, grieve, learn, smite, strive, walk, fight and give, without the aid of other verbs

Give the Mood, Tense, Person, and Number of the verbs in the following sentences —

You walked They move I go He wishes We cry Thou
laughed Run you We praised You ordered Tell him to come
I called Thou turnest Stop He came to shoot They like hunting
You run The horse fell They went to beg I saw him writing
The sailor told his story You make me ashamed

AUXILIARY VERBS

153 Only the **Present** and **Past** tenses are expressed by inflections of the verb itself. Additional tenses are formed by the help of other verbs, called **Auxiliaries**, viz *be, have, shall, and will*

Auxiliary means helping. Such verbs are frequently used, and are of great importance.

Do, May, and Can would be ranked as auxiliaries, if the *Emphatic* and *Potential* moods were admitted into the conjugation of the verb.

Some of the auxiliaries are also used as principal verbs.

154 The verb **be** has two distinct uses —

(1) As an intransitive verb either of complete or incomplete predication, as, "He that cometh to God must believe that He *is*, and that He *is* a rewarder of them that diligently seek Him." The first *is* = exists, and is complete, the second *is* is incomplete and has as its complement all the words that follow it.

(2) As an auxiliary verb. The **Passive Voice** is formed by joining the past participle of a verb to the verb "be" throughout, as, he *is* loved, *to be* loved, *being* loved. The **Progressive** form of the active voice is formed by similarly joining the present participle, as, I *am* loving, I *was* loving, &c.

*Conjugation of be**Present Tense*

Am

Past Tense

Was

Pas' Participle

Been

INDICATIVE MOOD

*Present Tense**Singular*

1	Person I	am
2	" Thou	art
3	" He, she or it, is	

Plural

1	Person We	are
2	" You	are
3	" They	are

Past Tense

1	I	was
2	Thou	wast
3	He	was

1	We	were
2	You	were
3	They	were

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense

1	If I	be
2	If thou	be
3	If he	be

1	If we	be
2	If you	be
3	If they	be

Past Tense

1	If I	were
2	If thou	wert
3	If he	were

1	If we	were
2	If you	were
3	If they	were

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Singular

2	Be (thou)
---	-----------

Plural

2	Be (ye, or you)
---	-----------------

INFINITIVE MOOD

To be

GERUNDS

Being

To be

PARTICIPLES

*Present, Being**Past, Been*

155 The verb have has also two uses —

(1) As a *transitive verb* in the sense of *hold, possess*, as, I have a book(2) As an *auxiliary* Followed by the perfect participle of another verb, *have* forms the present perfect and past perfect tenses, as, I *have* written, I *had* written

*Conjugation of have**Present Tense*

Have

Singular

- 1 I have
2 Thou hast
2 He has

Past Tense

Had

PRESENT TENSE

- 1 I had
2 Thou hadst
3 He had

Perfect Participle

Had

Plural

- 1 We have
2 You have
3 They have

PAST TENSE

- 1 We had
2 You had
3 They had

IMPERATIVES

Have (thou) Have (ye, or you)

INFINITIVE

To have

PARTICIPLES

Having Had

156 Shall and will have only the present and past tenses of the indicative mood. They are used with infinitives to form the future tenses of verbs.

Conjugation of shall

PRESENT TENSE

Singular

- 1 I shall
2 Thou shalt
3 He shall

Plural

- 1 We shall
2 Ye, or you shall
3 They shall

PAST TENSE

- 1 I should
2 Thou shouldst
3 He should

- 1 We should
2 Ye, or you should
3 They should

Conjugation of will

PRESENT TENSE

- 1 I will
2 Thou wilt
3 He will

- 1 We will
2 Ye, or you will
3 They will

PAST TENSE

- 1 I would
2 Thou wouldst
3 He would

- 1 We would
2 Ye, or you would
3 They would

157 *Shall* primarily means *obligation*, what one *ought* to do, *will* means *wish*, what a person is *willing* to do. But the force of these two auxiliaries varies with the person of the verb. The following notes should be carefully studied —

(1) *Shall* retains its primary meaning in the second and third persons singular and plural, as, Thou *shalt* not kill, he *shall* surely die. Besides commanding and threatening, it also *promises*, as, He *shall* be blessed.

(2) *Shall* is only an auxiliary of the future in the first person, and in interrogative sentences in the second person, as, *Shall you go?* It is an independent verb in the second and third persons.

(3) *Shall*, in the first person singular and plural, denotes simple futurity. It simply states that something will happen, as, I *shall* go home. It does not denote any *wish* on the part of the speaker. On the other hand, *will* in the first person implies that the action is dependent upon the will of the speaker. I *will* go home, denotes that it is my own wish to go.

(4) *Will* in the second and third persons usually means simple futurity, without any reference to the wish of the agent. He *will* be punished, simply states what will happen.

EXERCISE XXII

Give the Mood, Tense, Person and Number of the verbs in the following —

Will you do it? Shall I send it? Thou shalt not kill. The dogs will bark. He should not have done it. The cat will catch the mouse. I shall go to Calcutta. I will go to Calcutta. He will suffer for it. You should not hurt him. They would not take the money. Be kind. We were tired, but you had done nothing to tire you. Having nothing of value, I have never been afraid of thieves. If you were as wise as your father we would listen to you. She should have thought about it.

Name the Principal Verbs and Auxiliaries in the following sentences —

We shall sail to-morrow. He has lost his book. You should not do that. I have a horse. We were staying with him. Will you come with me? He is a great coward. Shall I send for him? Will you tell them? You should not go.

158 The following is the complete conjugation of the regular verb to love, with auxiliaries

ACTIVE VOICE

Pres Ind, Love *Past* Loved *Past Part*, Loved

INDICATIVE MOOD <

PRESENT *Indefinite**Singular**Plural*

1	I	love	1	We	love
2	Thou	lovest	2	You	love
3	He	loves, or loveth	3	They	love

PRESENT *Imperfect or Continuous*

1	I	am	loving	1	We	are	loving
2	Thou	art	loving	2	You	are	loving
3	He	is	loving	3	They	are	loving

PRESENT *Perfect*

1	I	have	loved	1	We	have	loved
2	Thou	hast	loved	2	You	have	loved
3	He	has, or hath	loved	3	They	have	loved

PRESENT *Perfect Continuous*

1	I	have	been	loving	1	We	have	been	loving
2	Thou	hast	been	loving	2	You	have	been	loving
3	He	has	been	loving	3	They	have	been	loving

PAST *Indefinite*

1	I	loved	1	We	loved
2	Thou	lovedst	2	You	loved
3	He	loved	3	They	loved

PAST *Imperfect or Continuous*

1	I	was	loving	1	We	were	loving
2	Thou	wast	loving	2	You	were	loving
3	He	was	loving	3	They	were	loving

PAST *Perfect*

1	I	had	loved	1	We	had	loved
2	Thou	hadst	loved	2	You	had	loved
3	He	had	loved	2	They	had	loved

PAST *Perfect Continuous*

1	I	had	been	loving	1	We	had	been	loving
2	Thou	hadst	been	loving	2	You	had	been	loving
3	He	had	been	loving	3	They	had	been	loving

FUTURE *Indefinite*

1	I shall love	1	We shall love
2	Thou wilt love	2	You will love
3	He will love	3	They will love

FUTURE *Imperfect or Continuous*

1	I shall be loving	1	We shall be loving
2	Thou wilt be loving	2	You will be loving
3	He will be loving	3	They will be loving

FUTURE *Perfect*

1	I shall have loved	1	We shall have loved
2	Thou wilt have loved	2	You will have loved
3	He will have loved	3	They will have loved

FUTURE *Perfect Continuous*

1	I shall have been loving	1	We shall have been loving
2	Thou wilt have been loving	2	You will have been loving
3	He will have been loving	3	They will have been loving

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT *Indefinite*

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
1	If I love	1	If we love
2	If thou love	2	If you love
3	If he love	3	If they love

PRESENT *Imperfect or Continuous*

1	If I be loving	1	If we be loving
2	If thou be loving	2	If you be loving
3	If he be loving	3	If they be loving

This is the old form of the Subjunctive. If I *am* loving is now generally used.

PRESENT *Perfect*

1	If I have loved	1	If we have loved
2	If thou have loved	2	If you have loved
3	If he have loved	3	If they have loved

PRESENT *Perfect Continuous*

1	If I have been loving	1	If we have been loving
2	If thou have been loving	2	If you have been loving
3	If he have been loving	3	If they have been loving

PAST *Indefinite*

1	If I loved	1	If we loved
2	If thou lovedst	2	If you loved
3	If he loved	3	If they loved

PAST *Imperfect or Continuous*

- | | | | | | |
|---|---------|-------------|---|---------|-------------|
| 1 | If I | were loving | 1 | If we | were loving |
| 2 | If thou | wert loving | 2 | If you | were loving |
| 3 | If he | were loving | 3 | If they | were loving |

PAST *Perfect*

- | | | | | | |
|---|---------|-------------|---|---------|-----------|
| 1 | If I | had loved | 1 | If we | had loved |
| 2 | If thou | hadst loved | 2 | If you | had loved |
| 3 | If he | had loved | 3 | If they | had loved |

PAST *Perfect Continuous*

- | | | | | | |
|---|---------|-------------------|---|---------|-----------------|
| 1 | If I | had been loving | 1 | If we | had been loving |
| 2 | If thou | hadst been loving | 2 | If you | had been loving |
| 3 | If he | had been loving | 3 | If they | had been loving |

FUTURE *Indefinite*

- | | | | | | |
|---|---------|--------------|---|---------|-------------|
| 1 | If I | should love | 1 | If we | should love |
| 1 | If thou | wouldst love | 2 | If you | would love |
| 3 | If he | would love | 3 | If they | would love |

FUTURE *Imperfect or Continuous**Singular*

- | | | |
|---|---------|-------------------|
| 1 | If I | should be loving |
| 2 | If thou | wouldst be loving |
| 3 | If he | would be loving |

Plural

- | | | |
|---|---------|------------------|
| 1 | If we | should be loving |
| 2 | If you | would be loving |
| 3 | If they | would be loving |

FUTURE *Perfect*

- | | | | | | |
|---|---------|--------------------|---|---------|-------------------|
| 1 | If I | should have loved | 1 | If we | should have loved |
| 2 | If thou | wouldst have loved | 2 | If you | would have loved |
| 3 | If he | would have loved | 3 | If they | would have loved |

FUTURE *Perfect Continuous*

- | | | | | | |
|---|---------|--------------------------|---|---------|-------------------------|
| 1 | If I | should have been loving | 1 | If we | should have been loving |
| 2 | If thou | wouldst have been loving | 2 | If you | would have been loving |
| 3 | If he | would have been loving | 3 | If they | would have been loving |

IMPERATIVE MOOD

- | | | | |
|---|-------------|---|-------------------|
| 2 | Love (thou) | 2 | Love (ye, or you) |
|---|-------------|---|-------------------|

INFINITIVE MOOD

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <i>Indefinite, To love</i> | <i>Perfect, To have loved</i> |
| <i>Imperfect or Continuous, To be loving</i> | |
| <i>Perfect Continuous, To have been loving</i> | |

GERUNDS

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------|------------------------|
| <i>Nom and Obj</i> | Loving | <i>Dative, To love</i> |
|--------------------|--------|------------------------|

PARTICIPLES

- | | | |
|------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| <i>Present, Loving</i> | <i>Past, Loved</i> | <i>Perfect, Having loved</i> |
| | <i>Perfect Continuous, Having been loving</i> | |

EXERCISE XXIII

Give the Mood, Tense, Person, and Number of the verbs in the following —

I have been walking You commanded We shall leave I am going He has departed If I write I shall have sent Love your enemies You had returned If I have examined Having deserted You had been sleeping He ought to love him Look before you leap I am making the box Ramu has been speaking They will have arrived I shall go next week You may do it He can remain I see a boy riding He likes reading Lying is base If he come, I will go with him Let him that stole, steal no more If he should come before night I will let you know Had they invited me I should have gone To have seen him again would have been a great pleasure to me To be wasting your time when there is so much for you to do is foolish Buy the truth and sell it not

Conj. gate fully the following verbs — Write, bring, steal, keep, make

PASSIVE VOICE

159 The **Passive Voice** is formed by adding the Past Participle of a *transitive verb* after the verb *to be* in all the moods and tenses, thus —

Conjugation of to be loved

Pres Ind, *Am loved* Past, *Was loved*
Perfect Part, *Been loved*

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT Indefinite

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
1	I	am loved	1	We	are loved
2	Thou	art loved	2	You	are loved
3	He	is loved	3	They	are loved

PRESENT Imperfect or Continuous

1	I	am being loved	1	We	are being loved
2	Thou	art being loved	2	You	are being loved
3	He	is being loved	3	They	are being loved

PRESENT Perfect

1	I	have been loved	1	We	have been loved
2	Thou	hast been loved	2	You	have been loved
3	He	has been loved	3	They	have been loved

PAST *Indefinite*

1	I	was loved	1	We	were loved
2	Thou	wast loved	2	You	were loved
3	He	was loved	3	They	were loved

PAST *Imperfect* or *Continuous*

1	I	was being loved	1	We	were being loved
2	Thou	wast being loved	2	You	were being loved
3	He	was being loved	3	They	were being loved

PAST *Perfect*

1	I	had been loved	1	We	had been loved
2	Thou	hadst been loved	2	You	had been loved
3	He	had been loved	3	They	had been loved

FUTURE *Indefinite*

1	I	shall be loved	1	We	shall be loved
2	Thou	wilt be loved	2	You	will be loved
3	He	will be loved	3	They	will be loved

FUTURE *Perfect*¹

1	I	shall have been loved	1	We	shall have been loved
2	Thou	wilt have been loved	2	You	will have been loved
3	He	will have been loved	3	They	will have been loved

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT *Indefinite*

1	If I	be loved	1	If we	be loved
2	If thou	be loved	2	If you	be loved
3	If he	be loved	3	If they	be loved

PRESENT *Perfect*

1	If I	have been loved	1	If we	have been loved
2	If thou	have been loved	2	If you	have been loved
3	If he	have been loved	3	If they	have been loved

PAST *Indefinite*

1	If I	were loved	1	If we	were loved
2	If thou	wert loved	2	If you	were loved
3	If he	were loved	3	If they	were loved

PAST *Imperfect* or *Continuous*

1	If I	were being loved	1	If we	were being loved
2	If thou	wert being loved	2	If you	were being loved
3	If he	were being loved	3	If they	were being loved

¹ The Progressive form is rarely used in the Passive. The Past Perfect Continuous, the Future Imperfect or *Continuous*, and the Future Perfect Continuous are wanting.

PAST *Perfect*

1	If I	had	been	loved	1	If we	had	been	loved
2	If thou	hadst	been	loved	2	If you	had	been	loved
3	If he	had	been	loved	3	If they	had	been	loved

FUTURE *Indefinite*

1	If I	should	be	loved	1	If we	should	be	loved
2	If thou	wouldst	be	loved	2	If you	would	be	loved
3	If he	would	be	loved	3	If they	would	be	loved

FUTURE *Perfect*

1	If I	should	have	been	loved	2	If we	should	have	been	loved
2	If thou	wouldst	have	been	loved	2	If you	would	have	been	loved
3	If he	would	have	been	loved	3	If they	would	have	been	loved

IMPERATIVE MOOD

2	Be (thou) loved	2	Be (ye or vou) loved
---	-----------------	---	----------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD

<i>Indefinite</i> , To be loved	<i>Perfect</i> , To have been loved
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------

GERUNDS

<i>Nom</i> and <i>Obj</i> , Being loved	<i>Dative</i> , To be loved
---	-----------------------------

PARTICIPLES

<i>Imperfect or Continuous</i> , Being loved	<i>Perfect</i> , Been loved
<i>Compound Perfect</i> , Having been loved	

THE INFLECTIONS OF THE TENSES

160 Verbs ending in ss, sh, ch, x, or o, form the third person singular of the present indicative by adding es, as (dress) he *dresses*, (march) he *marches*, (go) he *goes*, &c

161 Verbs ending in y change y into i, before the terminations est, es, eth, or ed, but not before ing, as, (try), *trust*, *trusts*, *tried*, *trying*, but y with a vowel before it is not changed into i, as, (pray) *prayerst*, *prays* or *prayeth*, *prayed*, *praying*, &c

162 Verbs accented on the last syllable, and verbs of one syllable ending in a single consonant after a single

vowel, double the final consonant before the terminations *eth, est, ed, ing, &c*, but never before *s*, as (*cut*), *cutteth, cuttest, cutting, cuts*, (*forget*), *forgettest, forgetting, &c*, (*repeat*), *repeatest, repeating, &c*

EXERCISE XXIV

Conjugate the following Verbs in the Passive Voice —
Slay, forgive, shake, reward

Give the Voice, Mood, Tense, Person, and Number of the verbs in the following sentences —

Thou art praised Thou canst love me Gopal was beaten by Krishna She will love them Having hated We should love all men Thou shalt love thy neighbour You were loved Remember my advice We must learn our lessons They had been forgotten Thou shalt be rewarded If he be called, he will come He should be punished He was informed of it They might have loved their friends Temperance preserves health Honesty is the best policy No one has yet reached the North Pole Had anything occurred he would have written

Put the following sentences first into Past, and secondly into Future tenses —

The sun sinks below the horizon The grain is ready to be cut At the change of the monsoon, it thunders and lightens terribly The general has taken his departure I am going to school It is impossible for me to do it The waves are dashing over the pier This course is approved by Government, and we have to agree to it

Write the second and third persons singular of —

Catch, grind, hope, destroy, injure, crave, pass, err, hunt, tug, sob, attend, differ, apply, copy, betray

Make two sentences, each containing a verb in the present perfect continuous tense, indicative mood, active voice

Make two sentences, each containing a verb in the future imperfect tense, indicative mood, active voice

Make two sentences, each containing a verb in the past imperfect tense, indicative mood, passive voice

Make two sentences, each containing a verb in the past imperfect tense, subjunctive mood, passive voice

OTHER AUXILIARY OR DEFECTIVE VERBS

163 Some verbs in frequent use are thus conjugated —

To Do

*Present Tense**Past Tense**Perfect Participle*

Do

Did

Done

PRESENT TENSE

Singular

- 1 I do
- 2 Thou doest or doth
- 3 He does, doth or doth

Plural

- 1 We do
- 2 You do
- 3 They do

PAST TENSE

- 1 I did
- 2 Thou didst
- 3 He did

- 1 We did
- 2 You did
- 3 They did

IMPERATIVE—Do

INFINITIVE—To do

PARTICIPLES

*Present—Doing**Perfect—Done*

Go has went in the past tense, and gone in the participle

164. The following verbs are more or less defective, or wanting in some parts —

May

PRESENT TENSE

Singular

- 1 I may
- 2 Thou mayest
- 3 He may

Plural

- 1 We may
- 2 You may
- 3 They may

PAST TENSE

- 1 I might
- 2 Thou mightest
- 3 He might

- 1 We might
- 2 You might
- 3 They might

Can

PRESENT TENSE.

- 1 I can
- 2 Thou canst
- 3 He can

- 1 We can
- 2 You can
- 3 They can

PAST TENSE

- 1 I could
- 2 Thou couldst
- 3 He could

- 1 We could
- 2 You could
- 3 They could

✓ 165 *May* means *to be allowed, to be possible, chance*, as, I *may* go, he *may* come Placed before its subject, it expresses a wish, as *May* you prosper! *Can* expresses *power*, as, I *can* do it It is also used to express *permission*, as, You *can* go if you like Here *can* = *may* *May* and *can* were formerly used to form what was called the Potential Mood

✓ 166 *Must* expresses *necessity, duty, or certainty* of inference, as, I *must* be off, You *must* be wrong, The wells *must* be dry by this time *Must* does not change for tense, number, or person It is used only in the Indicative

✓ 167 *Ought* is the past tense of the verb *owe*, to have It is used as a present to express *duty*, and is always followed by an infinitive, as, I *ought* to go, You *ought* to have done it When past time is expressed, *ought* is joined to a perfect infinitive, as, I *ought to have* done it

✓ 168 *Quoth* means *said* It is used only in the first and third persons in the past tense, and precedes its subject, as, *quoth* he It is now very rarely used

Worth, in *Woe worth* the day, is from *worthen* to become, and means *woe be* to the day The noun following is in the indirect objective

✓ 169 *Dare* In the sense of *to have courage, to venture*, this verb has both *dare* and *dars* in the third person, sing present, and *dared* or *durst* in the past in all persons When followed by a negative *dare* only is used, as, He *dare* not do it In the sense of challenge *dars* only is used in the third person, sing present, and *dared* in the past, as, He *dars* you to do it, I *dared* him to meet me

✓ 170 *Need* is a regular verb, signifying *require* Like *dare* it is used without the final *s* in the third person present indicative when followed by a negative, as, He *need* not go, He *needs* a rest *Needs* has become an adverb meaning *of necessity*, as, I must *needs* write

VARIOUS FORMS OF VERBS

171 The **Emphatic** form is used to give more force, as a person raises his voice in speaking. It consists in placing the infinitive of the verb after *do* or *did*, thus —

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Emphatic

1	I do	love	1	We do	love
2	Thou dost	love	2	You do	love
3	He does or doth	love	3	They do	love

Past Emphatic

1	I did	love	1	We did	love
2	Thou didst	love	2	You did	love
3	He did	love	3	They did	love

IMPERATIVE MOOD

2	Do thou love	2	Do ye, or you love
---	--------------	---	--------------------

The emphatic form is confined to the tenses without auxiliary verbs

172 The **Interrogative** form is used in asking questions. It consists in placing the nominative between the auxiliary and the verb, thus, *Shall I go?*

If there is no auxiliary, *do* or *did* is usually placed before the nominative, thus, *Do I write well? Did you hear?*

An interrogative sentence may also be formed by placing the verb before its subject, as, *Lovest thou me? Said he not so?* This old form is now seldom used, except in poetry, and with the verb *to be*, as, *Is he here?*

A polite request may be made in the interrogative form, as, "Will you have the goodness to do so and so?"

173 The **Negative** form is used in denying. It requires *not*, or some other negative

If there is an *auxiliary*, *not* is inserted *after* it, as, *We will not get it*. If there is no auxiliary, *do* is usually put before *not*, as, *I do not wish to go*. *Not* is sometimes simply placed after the verb, as, *He spoke not a word*. *Not* is placed *before* the infinitive, as, *I told him not to come*.

Do is *not emphatic* when used in interrogative and negative sentences

EXERCISE XXV

Parse the nouns and pronouns, and give the mood and tense of the verbs, in the following sentences —

I must not do it. Can you lend me your knife? He ought to do his duty. My father told me that I might go. "Bring it to me," quoth he. You may go to-morrow. I could give the money if I wished. Did you tell him to come? You can get it next week. I did not see him.

She may go as soon as she can. May I speak to her? Could you come to-morrow? Ought I not to let him know? You must be early or you will have to wait. How can I help you?

If you are so careless no help will be of any use. Any man may take a horse to water, but no man can make it drink. Boast not thyself of to-morrow, for thou knowest not what a day may bring forth.

If he had said so, I should have believed him. If you would lend me your dictionary, I should be much obliged to you. The officer fell while leading his troops. We arrived there first by taking a shorter road. By using false pretences he gained his end, but he suffered for it afterwards.

EXERCISE XXVI

Put the following sentences into the emphatic form —

I like him. He told them. Ask him. I detest tobacco. Bid them go away. The two boys fought. Come with me. The sun shines. Their horse bolted. The cock crows early.

Put the following sentences into the interrogative form —

I shall go. He is there. We have some mangoes. Your father paid him. You like music. She has finished the book. He has received my letter. They did not understand the question. There is a tiger in the jungle. He that sows iniquity shall reap vanity. A merry heart maketh a cheerful countenance.

Put the following sentences into the negative form —

He will come. You are fortunate. My brother went away. I am well. Is he afraid? I have finished my exercise. We found them at home. He was shot by the enemy. A wise man keeps silent. Tell me all. The tide comes in slowly.

Correct the following errors —

Why you come? What they are doing? When the battle of Plassey was fought? To whom you will give this book? You were absent yesterday? Why you told my father? Why you tell lies? How the carpenter does his work? The teacher has come or not? Why you did come? How then you come here?

CAUSATIVE VERBS, ETC

✓ 174 **Causative Verbs** are those which mean to *cause* or *make*. Only a few English verbs have a causal form, as, *rise*, causal, *raise*, *fall*, *fill*, *sit*, *set*, *see*, *show*, *lie*, *lay*, &c. The tree *falls*, He *filled* the tree.

Some verbs take a causal sense without any change of form, as, Water *boils*, He *boils* the water, Govind *ran*, The doctor *ran* a needle into the boil.

Intransitive verbs become transitive when used in a causal sense.

The causal sense may also be expressed by other words, as, I *made* him do it.

The name **Factative**¹ is given to some transitive verbs which take *one* object only, but require some word or phrase to be added to the verb to make its sense complete, as, The soldiers *made* him *emperor*. The word *emperor* is added to complete the sense of the verb, and is called its **Complement**. The Complement may be a noun, an adjective, a participle, a phrase, &c., as, He set him *free*, They forced him *to go*.

175 Some intransitive verbs take objects after them of a similar meaning, as, He *fought* a good *fight*. Such objects are said to be **Cognate**, because they are from the same root as the verb.

176 **Impersonal Verbs** are used in the third person singular, as, it *rains*, it *thunders*, how *dark* it grows. In *methinks*, *it* is omitted and the pronoun in the objective is placed before the verb. The meaning is, *It appears to me*.

PARSING OF VERBS

The following is the order to be observed — (1) *Conjugation* (strong, weak), (2) *Kind* (transitive, intransitive), (3) *Voice*, (4) *Mood*, (5) *Tense*, (6) *Person*, (7) *Number*, (8) *Relation to other words in the sentence*. If the verb is incomplete its complement should be named.

¹ Tending to make or cause.

EXAMPLES

"*The stone you threw smashed the window*"

Threw verb, strong, transitive, active, indicative, past, 2nd person, singular, agreeing with its subject *you*, and governing the relative *which* (understood)

Smashed verb, weak, transitive, active, indicative, past, 3rd person, singular, agreeing with its subject *stone*, and governing *window*

"*To be diligent is wise*"

To be verb, intransitive, incomplete (complement *diligent*) forming, with its complement, an infinitive noun-phrase

Is verb, intransitive, incomplete (complement *wise*) indicative, present, third person, singular, agreeing with its subject *to be diligent*

EXERCISE XXVII

Parse the verbs in the following sentences —

The gardener will fell the tree Does it till under ? Tell him to run the horse up and down He sighed a sigh and prayed a prayer I thought him a fool It rained fire and brimstone He died a happy death Some children fly kites / You are fighting a shadow I dare not come Parliament is still sitting The flowers would have withered if I had not watered them He might have passed if he had studied hard You may take the horse and have a ride Tell the boy to come to-morrow He should have gone when you ordered him His father built him a house If you go, I shall follow you To err is human, to forgive, Divine ✓

"Defer not till to morrow to be wise,
To morrow's sun on thee may never rise"

"How dull it is to pause, to make an end,
To rust unburnished, not to shine in use,
As though to breathe were life"

"The cock is crowing, the stream is flowing,
The small birds twitter, the lark doth glitter,
The green fields sleep in the sun"

"It caseth some, though none it ever cured,
To think their sorrows others have endured"

"Be noble ! And the nobleness that lies
In other men sleeping but never dead,
Will rise in majesty to meet thine own,
Then wilt thou see it gleam in many eyes,
Then will pure life around thy path be shed,
And thou wilt never more be sad and lone"

THE ADVERB

177 (An ADVERB is a word which modifies the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, as, Walk *quickly*, it is *too* large, he studies *very diligently*.)

The adverb is to the verb what the adjective is to the Noun

Adverbs sometimes qualify sentences or phrases, as, *Unfortunately*, he was not at home. The child was *nearly* under the wheels of the carriage

Adverbs are sometimes said to qualify prepositions and conjunctions, but this is hardly correct. Whenever an adverb appears to qualify a preposition it really qualifies a prepositional phrase. The only conjunctions which can be truly qualified by adverbs are conjunctive adverbs, (see below) and even then it will invariably be found that the whole idea which is modified by the adverb is contained *not in the conjunctive adverb alone*, but in it *plus* the sentence which it introduces

(Adverbs may be divided into three classes—(1) Simple, (2) Relative or Conjunctive, and (3) Interrogative)

178. (Simple Adverbs merely qualify the meaning of the words to which they are attached, as, Do it *well*, He came *quickly*, It is *nearly* black.)

Most adverbs belong to this class

179 (Relative or Conjunctive Adverbs both qualify words and connect sentences, as, He did it *when* all had come.)

When not only qualifies the verb *did* but joins the two sentences. A *conjunctive adverb* should be distinguished from a *conjunction*. The latter simply *connects*, it does not *qualify*. *Relative or Conjunctive Adverbs* are so called because they have the properties both of relative pronouns and of conjunctions, they refer to an antecedent expressed or understood and they join sentences together

(The chief Relative or Conjunctive Adverbs are *when*, *while*, *where*, *whence*, *why*, *how*, *as*, and *then*.)

180 (Interrogative Adverbs are the same as relative or conjunctive but are used to ask questions, as, *When* did he come? *Where* is he? *Why* did you refuse?)

181 Simple Adverbs may be divided into different classes, according to their meaning —

(1) Adverbs of **Quality**, as, *well, ill* Most adverbs belong to this class

(2) Adverbs of **Time**, as,

Afterwards, again, already, ago, before, by and-by, daily, early, ever, hereafter, hourly, immediately, lately, never, now, often, once, presently, seldom, since, sometimes, soon, then, to day, to morrow, until, when, while, whilst, yesterday, &c

(3) Adverbs of **Place**, as,

Above, afar, aloof, apart, around, aside, asunder, away, backwards, before, behind, below, down, downwards, elsewhere, everywhere, far, forth, forward, hence, inward, off, onward, out, outwards, sideways, upwards, where, within, yonder, &c

(4) Adverbs of **Degree or Quantity**, as,

Almost, also, altogether, enough, exceedingly, little, much, nearly, quite, rather, scarcely, sufficiently, too, very, wholly, &c

(5) **Numeral** Adverbs, as,

Once, twice, firstly, often, frequently, singly, two by two, &c

(6) Adverbs of **Cause and Effect**, as,

Accordingly, doubtless, hence, likewise, still, thence, therefore, wherefore, why, &c

(7) Adverbs of **Belief and Disbelief**, as,

Yes, no, surely, perhaps, indeed, &c

(8) Adverbs of **Comparison**, as,

So, as, than, &c

The compounds of *here, there, where, hither, thither, whither, hence, how, thence, and when* are all adverbs

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

182 Many adverbs admit of comparison like adjectives. The numerous class ending in *ly* are compared by placing **more** and **most** before them, as, *willingly, more willingly, most willingly*. Others take **er** and **est** as adjectives—soon, sooner, soonest, hard, harder, hardest

A few adverbs are compared irregularly —

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
Ill, badly	worse	worst
Well	better	best
Much	more	most
Little	less	least
Far	farther	farthest
(Forth)	further	furthest
Nigh, near	nearer	next
Late	later	latest, last
(Rathe, <i>adj</i>)	rather	

The manner in which the above are used shows whether they are adverbs or adjectives. Rathe, *early*, is now obsolete.

ADVERBIAL PHRASES

183 Two or more words having the force of an adverb form an **Adverbial Phrase**, as, *at last*, *by and by*, *now and then*, &c

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

184 Nearly all adverbs come from other words

(1) Most adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding *ly*, as *wise*, *wisely*, *useful*, *usefully*

Ly is shortened from *like*. Adverbs of this class are mostly adverbs of quality.

Adjectives ending in *y* not preceded by a vowel, change *y* into *i* before *ly*, as, *pretty*, *prettily*.

Adjectives ending in *le* simply change the *e* into *y*, as, *single*, *singly*.

(2) Some adverbs are formed from nouns, as, *afoot* (on foot), *ashore* (on shore) *across*, *aside*, *betimes*, *weekly*, &c

(3) Some are derived from prepositions, as, *upwards*, *downwards*, *within*.

185 Other parts of speech are frequently used as adverbs, as—**Nouns**, as, *tozen* made, *skin* deep. **Pronouns**, as, *none* the worse. **Adjectives**, as, *prill* good. **Prepositions**, as, I told you *before*. When prepositions are not followed by the objective case they are adverbs.

PARSING ADVERBS

In parsing an adverb state (1) its class, (2) its degree of comparison, and (3) its relation to other words in the sentence

EXERCISE XXVIII

Compare the following adverbs — Soon, excellently, much, seldom, near, badly, loud

Form Adverbs from the following words — Joyful, hasty, laughing, double, in, like, up, day, simple, weary

Write sentences in which the following nouns are used as adverbs — Machine, purse, tongue, time, sky, world

Parse the adverbs in the following sentences —

Never put off till to-morrow what should be done to-day. Think twice before you speak once. Where there is smoke, there is fire. This is pretty good, but not thoroughly good. He is much too slow in his movements. You are yet young enough to learn English very easily. We lived there long ago. He went once more in vain. No person could have acted more nobly, yet he was sadly disappointed. The virtuous are, in general, happy. Always try to read distinctly. Most men have cause, at last, to lament most bitterly their misimprovement of time. He is none the wiser for working hard. Home-made sweets are generally the most wholesome. Fire-proof safes are not necessarily thief-proof too.

THE PREPOSITION

186 A **Preposition** is a word *placed before* a noun or pronoun to show the relation in which the person or thing denoted by it stands to something else, as, The book is *on* the table.

The noun or pronoun which follows a preposition is said to be *governed* by it, and is in the *objective* case.

Sometimes a preposition comes *after* the word which it governs. This is especially the case with the relative pronoun, expressed or understood, as, *The boy (whom) you spoke of is here.*

187 Many prepositions refer to **Place**, as, *in, on, at, near, above, under, &c*

Some imply *rest* in a place, as *at, by, in, on*. Others imply *motion* to or from a place, as *down, from, into, up, &c*, and others both *rest in* and *motion to*, as, *about, above, near, through, under, &c*

188 Some prepositions express **Time**, as, *before* sunset, *after* ten o'clock

Originally most prepositions expressed only a relation *in space*, but in process of time they came equally to denote a similar relation *in time*. Some prepositions refer only to time, as, *during, until, since*

189 Other prepositions denote the **Agent, Cause, or Purpose**, as, *by, with, through*

EXERCISE XXIX

Name the Prepositions in the following sentences, and point out the words they govern —

The river issues from a cave, and flows down the side of the hill. We searched for flowers on yonder bank. From virtue to vice, the progress is gradual. Hold up the flag. Turn over another leaf. A pitcher made of silver. He lives in Calcutta. I came by sea. The bird perched on a tree beside the river. A battle between five lions and six tigers. He sailed round the world. He is above me in the class. He runs across the fields to the rail. Whom is that for? Being amid the crowd, I did not see him. Which book is it under? The tides of the ocean recur at regular intervals. The length of day and night varies little in the tropics. I have not spoken for days about business.

190 Prepositions are divided into four classes — (1) *Simple* prepositions, (2) *Compound* prepositions, (3) *Phrase* prepositions, and (4) *Participial* prepositions

(1) The following are **Simple Prepositions** *at, by, for, in, of, on, out, to, up, with, from, through, till, over, under, after*

Sometimes two simple prepositions are united, and then we have what has been called a **double preposition**, as, *into, onto, from, off, &c*

(2) **Compound Prepositions** are generally formed by prefixing a preposition to a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. On (a-) and by (be-) are the prepositions most frequently thus compounded, as, *before, behind, beneath, above, within, throughout, aboard, across, around, among, beside, &c*. In the phrases, a year, a day, &c, as in *twice a year*, *a* is a modification of *on*.

(3) **Phrase Prepositions** are made up of two or more words which are constantly used together, and jointly indicate a single relationship, as, *instead of, on account of, together with, for the sake of, in compliance with, by means of, with a view to, &c*.

(4) **Participial Prepositions** are present or past participles used as prepositions, as, *concerning, respecting, regarding, touching*. Except (excepted), save (saved), and past (passed) may now be regarded as prepositions.

191 Prepositions are sometimes added to verbs, the whole forming a *Prepositional Verb*, as, *boast of, agree to, hope for*.

By the aid of prepositions, intransitive verbs are thus made transitive. The words should not be prized separately.

192 **Distinction between Adverbs and Prepositions**—The same words are used sometimes as adverbs and sometimes as prepositions. They are to be distinguished according to the manner in which they are used. Prepositions always govern some noun or pronoun. Adverbs are not added to nouns or pronouns, but modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. In "Come on," *on* is an adverb, in "The book is on the table," *on* is a preposition.

But is a preposition when it is equal to *except*, as, None *but* him, I cannot *but* believe it, He was all *but* killed.

Nigh, near, nearer, next, are sometimes used as prepositions, or as adjectives with the preposition *to* understood, as *near* him, or *near* (to) him.

193 The following is a list of words which are generally prepositions —

A, about, above across, after, against along, amid amidst, among, amongst, around, at, athwart Before, behind, below, beneath, beside, besides, between, betwixt, beyond, but, by Concerning Down, during Except, excepting For from In into Near, nigh Of, off, on, over Regarding respecting, round Save, saving, since Through, throughout, till to, touching, toward, towards Under, underneath, until, up, upon With, within, without

EXERCISE XXX

Name the Prepositions in the following sentences, and point out the words they govern —

I went instead of him That is the house I spoke about According to the latest accounts he is somewhat better There was no one there except Rama He hath eaten me out of house and home Notwithstanding our entreaties, he would not yield I must not go on account of the weather I do not know what to say with reference to the proposal We wrote to him on account of our difficulty There is nothing to complain of in his manner With regard to the matter you spoke about I am in doubt The nation hopes for the restoration of peace To object to his action would be of no avail The enemy was driven back with the help of artillery We were ready by the time fixed, notwithstanding the many interruptions we had had

Make sentences in which down, behind, below, within, and
(1) Prepositions, and (2) Adverbs

THE CONJUNCTION

194 Conjunctions join sentences and words, as, *You can go but I must stay Two and two make four*

Relative pronouns and conjunctive adverbs also join sentences together, as, *I saw the boy who did it He came when he was well But who*, besides joining the sentences has the force of a relative, *when*, besides joining the sentences has an adverbial meaning Conjunctions simply join sentences or words

Some conjunctions help to shorten sentences “Rama and I will come” is equal to “Rama will come and I will come”

195 According to the purpose they serve in a sentence, conjunctions are divided into **Co-ordinative** and **Subordinative**

Sentences are of three kinds —

1 *Birds fly*, containing only one subject and one predicate, is called a **Simple** sentence

2 *Birds fly and fishes swim*, is a **Compound** sentence. It is composed of simple sentences, each independent of the other. Such sentences being of the same rank or order are called *co-ordinate*, and the conjunction *and* which joins them is called a **Co-ordinative Conjunction**

3 In the sentence, *Be diligent lest you fail*, one clause is *dependent* on the other, *you fail* is dependent on *be diligent*. This is called a **Complex** sentence. The dependent sentence or clause is called *subordinate*, and the conjunction *lest* which joins it to the principal sentence is called a **Subordinative Conjunction**

196 **Co-ordinative Conjunctions** are of four kinds, viz —

(1) **Copulative**, which simply add one statement to another — “An orange is *both* wholesome *and* refreshing

(2) **Disjunctive** or **Alternative** — “He is *either* a knave *or* a fool ”

(3) **Adversative**, denoting opposition in meaning — “He is poor *but* generous ”

(4) **Illative**, denoting consequence or effect — “He was a good man *and therefore* beloved ”

The following are the principal co-ordinative conjunctions — Accordingly, also, and besides, but, consequently, further, hence, however, likewise, moreover, nevertheless, notwithstanding, now, only, so, still, then, thus, therefore, well, wherefore, yet

197 **Subordinative Conjunctions** may indicate a great variety of relations in which the dependent clause may stand to the principal sentence. The following are the chief —

(1) **Simple Apposition** — “He saw *that* there was no hope ”

(2) **Reason, Cause or Effect** — “I will go *because* you wish me,”

(3) **Condition or Supposition** — "He will go *if* you pay him"

(4) **Comparison** — "He is *as* old *as* I," "He talks to you more *than* to me"

(5) **Time** — "He arrived *as* I was leaving"

The following conjunctions are for the most part *subordinative* — After, although, as, because, before, ere, except, for, if, lest, now, since, than, that, though, till, unless, while, where

Subordinative conjunctions are sometimes used co-ordinatively, as, He took the poor men to the hospital, *where* (= and there) they got medicine

198 Correlative Conjunctions — Some conjunctions are used in pairs, and are called *Correlatives*. Correlatives are words which have a like relation to each other in a sentence

The following are the most frequently used pairs —

either	— or	Either Govind or Krishna may go
neither	— nor	Neither Govind nor Krishna may go
whether	— or	Whether they go or stay, <i>we</i> will go
though	— yet	Though he fell, yet he was not hurt
both	— and	Both Govind and Krishna may go
as	— as	His writing is as good as yours
so	— as	His writing is not so good as yours

199 Forms of Conjunctions — Like adverbs, conjunctions are also sometimes arranged according to their *forms* —

- 1 Simple conjunctions, *as, and, as, but, for, if, &c*
- 2 Compound conjunctions, *as, however, likewise, nevertheless, therefore, &c*
- 3 Phrase conjunctions, *as, as far as, as though, inasmuch as, lest that, in order that, &c*

200 Distinction between Conjunctions and Prepositions — The *same* word may be a preposition or conjunction according to the manner in which it is used. Thus —

Rama came after Govind,	<i>after</i> is a prep
Rama came after Govind left,	<i>after</i> is a conj

When such words are followed by nouns or pronouns in the objective they are *prepositions*, when they join sentences together they are *conjunctions*

EXERCISE XXXI

Point out the conjunctions in the following sentences, and mention the class to which each belongs —

You must be silent while the teacher speaks. Except he pay in advance, he will not get it. He must stay till I come. You must not go if it rains. Krishna as well as Govind must go. In order that you may succeed, you must study hard. Your father is not so old as mine. I want neither the one nor the other. Although he called, the servant did not come. You can give me either tea or coffee. I came in order that I might tell him. Govind was there as well as his brother. Expect nothing, lest you be disappointed.

Distinguish prepositions from conjunctions in the following sentences —

Bring me a slate and a pencil. I write on a slate with a pencil. You may go either to day or to-morrow. He made a short, but excellent speech. Neither Govind nor Rama could work the sum. This is a shorter exercise than the last, although it is more difficult. He went from door to door. Within two hours, the train will arrive at Calcutta. Though he is poor, yet he is honest. He is generous as well as rich. Hari went to the magistrate instead of Krishna. Love not sleep, lest thou come to poverty.

THE INTERJECTION

201 AN INTERJECTION is a word used to express some sudden feeling, as, "*Ah!* what shall I do?"

The interjection is not properly a "part of speech," as it has no grammatical relation to any other word in the sentence. It does not express thought, or in any way modify or increase the meaning of the words which it accompanies. It merely indicates the kind of emotion—joy, grief, surprise, indignation, &c.—which the thought expressed rouses in the speaker.

Interjections have been called word sentences. Any word used in exclamation is an interjection, as, *Behold!* *welcome!* *good!* *well!* *help!* *fire!* *strange!* *shocking!* *wonderful!* &c. Many phrases are also used in an exclamatory or interjectional sense, as *Oh dear me!* *for shame!* *well done!* &c. In *ah me!* some word is understood, as *pity me!*

The following is a list of the most common interjections.—*Adieu!* *ah!* *aha!* *ah!* *avaunt!* *away!* *fie!* *ha!* *hah!* *huh!* *hark!* *he!* *ho!* *hush!* *hurrah!* *huzza!* *lo!* *O!* *oh!* *oh!* *pshaw!* *pooh!* *tush!*

THE SAME WORD USED FOR DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH

202 The great majority of words can be only one part of speech in whatever construction they are found. Others are different parts of speech in different connections. It should be remembered that it is the *meaning* of a word in any sentence and the purpose which it serves in the expression of the thought, that makes it one part of speech or another. The following are examples of the same word used differently —

A	<i>Indef Art</i>	Give me <i>a</i> book
	<i>Prep</i>	I go <i>a</i> fishing Twice <i>a</i> year
About	<i>Prep</i>	He walked <i>about</i> the room
	<i>Adv</i>	He is walking <i>about</i>
Above	<i>Prep</i>	He ranks <i>above</i> us
	<i>Adv</i>	The <i>above</i> -mentioned book
After	<i>Adj</i>	He died from the <i>after</i> effects
	<i>Prep</i>	He ran <i>after</i> the thief
	<i>Conj</i>	He ran <i>after</i> the child fell
All	<i>Adj used as Noun</i>	We lost out <i>all</i>
	<i>Adj of Quantity</i>	He drank <i>all</i> the water
	<i>Adj of Number</i>	He ate <i>all</i> the mangoes
	<i>Adv</i>	He is <i>all</i> alone
Another	<i>Noun</i>	Take not <i>another's</i> goods
	<i>Adj</i>	Give me <i>another</i> ^{gun}
Any	<i>Adj of Quantity</i>	Have you <i>any</i> rice
	<i>Adj of Number</i>	Are there <i>any</i> coolies about ?
	<i>Adv</i>	I cannot go <i>any</i> farther
As	<i>Pronoun</i>	You are mistaken <i>as</i> I thought
	<i>Conjunction</i>	<i>As</i> the rain has ceased, I shall go
	<i>Conjunctive Adv</i>	This is not <i>as</i> good <i>as</i> that <i>As</i> I looked, the vision faded Do it <i>as</i> I told you You must take it <i>as</i> it is
Before	<i>Adv</i>	Address my letters <i>as before</i>
	<i>Prep</i>	He stood <i>before</i> the door
	<i>Conj</i>	Come <i>before</i> it is too late
Better	<i>Adj</i>	My horse is <i>better</i> than his
	<i>Adv</i>	You had <i>better</i> go
	<i>Noun (pl)</i>	Follow your <i>bettors</i>
Both	<i>Adj</i>	<i>Both</i> men were there
	<i>Pro</i>	<i>Both</i> of them came
	<i>Conj</i>	<i>Both</i> you and I may go

But	Rel Pr	No voice <i>but</i> could well join
	Adv	He comes <i>but</i> once a month
	Prep	Who was it <i>but</i> Rama ?
	Conj	Govind left, <i>but</i> Krishna remained
By	Adv	The train has just gone <i>by</i>
	Prep	Rama was beaten <i>by</i> Govind
Down	Noun	The ups and <i>downs</i> of life
	Adj	He took the <i>down</i> train
	Adv	The sun went <i>down</i>
	Prep	They sailed <i>down</i> the river
Either	Adj	Take <i>either</i> book
	Pro	<i>Either</i> of these will do
	Conj	<i>Either</i> John or James told me
Else	Adv	I must go somewhere <i>else</i>
	Conj	He is poor, <i>else</i> he would have bought it
Enough	Noun	<i>Enough</i> has been said
	Adj	He has money <i>enough</i>
	Adv	He is not rich <i>enough</i>
Even	Adj	It stands upon <i>even</i> ground
	Verb	You must <i>even</i> the surface
	Adv	He has not <i>even</i> written
	Conj	<i>Even</i> a king must die
Except	Verb	You are <i>excepted</i> from the rule
	Prep	All came <i>except</i> Krishna
	Conj	I shall not go <i>except</i> he comes
First	Adj	He is the <i>first</i> boy in his class
	Adv	I <i>first</i> saw him to day
For	Adv	He was sent <i>for</i>
	Prep	I have not seen him <i>for</i> a long time
	Conj	I must go, <i>for</i> it is late
Half	Noun	One <i>half</i> is done
	Adj	Go at <i>half</i> speed
	Adv	The man was <i>half</i> dead
How	Adv	<i>How</i> are you to day ?
	Conj	I asked him <i>how</i> he did it
In	Adv	Come <i>in</i>
	Prep	The book is <i>in</i> the box
Least	Adj	This is the <i>least</i> quantity
	Adv	He is the <i>least</i> attentive in the class
Little	Noun	Promise <i>little</i> and do much
	Adj	He is only a <i>little</i> boy
	Adv	He reads <i>little</i>
More	Noun	<i>More</i> has been done than I thought
	Adj	Bring <i>more</i> bread
	Adv	He will come once <i>more</i>
Most	Adj	<i>Most</i> people like him
	Adv	I liked him <i>most</i>
Much	Noun	<i>Much</i> has been given to him
	Adj	Have you <i>much</i> money ?
	Adv	I am <i>much</i> pleased with him

Near	<i>Adj</i> <i>Verb</i> <i>Adv</i> <i>Prep</i>	It is a <i>near</i> relation The ship <i>neared</i> the shore Come <i>near</i> It is <i>near</i> the bottom
Needs	<i>Noun</i> <i>Verb</i> <i>Adv</i>	Our <i>needs</i> are known The ground <i>needs</i> rain I must <i>needs</i> go
Neither	<i>Adj</i> <i>Pro</i> <i>Conj</i>	I like <i>neith</i> r side <i>Neither</i> of them came <i>Neither</i> you nor he can do it
Next	<i>Adj</i> <i>Adv</i> <i>Prep</i>	I live in the <i>next</i> house Whose turn is <i>next</i> ? He sat <i>next</i> me
No	<i>Noun</i> <i>Adj</i> <i>Adv</i>	The <i>noes</i> are in a majority I have <i>no</i> money He is <i>no</i> better
Now	<i>Noun</i> <i>Adv</i> <i>Conj</i>	An eternal <i>now</i> He came just <i>now</i> <i>Now</i> , you can do it as well as he
Off	<i>Adj</i> <i>Adv</i> <i>Prep</i>	The <i>off</i> ox is strong Why do you run <i>off</i> ? He fell <i>off</i> his horse
One	<i>Noun</i> <i>Pro</i> <i>Adj</i>	Bring your little <i>ones</i> Any <i>one</i> may go I have but <i>one</i> rupee
Only	<i>Adv</i> <i>Adj</i> <i>Conj</i>	He had an <i>only</i> son I have <i>only</i> four annas left Do as you like, <i>only</i> leave me
Other	<i>Noun</i> <i>Adj</i>	They leave their wealth to <i>others</i> Bring the <i>other</i> book
Out	<i>Noun</i> <i>Adv</i>	The ins and <i>outs</i> of the matter He is not yet <i>out</i>
Past	<i>Noun</i> <i>Adj</i> <i>Prep</i>	A <i>past</i> that never was present Remember not <i>past</i> years The rich man is <i>past</i> hope
Right	<i>Noun</i> <i>Adj</i> <i>Verb</i> <i>Adv</i>	<i>Right</i> is might Take the <i>right</i> hand Every wrong will be <i>righted</i> <i>Right</i> noble
Round	<i>Noun</i> <i>Adj</i> <i>Verb</i> <i>Adv</i> <i>Prep</i>	Our daily <i>round</i> of duty This is a <i>round</i> hole <i>Round</i> the plank The wheel turns <i>round</i> Go <i>round</i> the garden
Save	<i>Verb</i> <i>Prep</i>	Try to <i>save</i> him All <i>save</i> one have left
Since	<i>Adv</i> <i>Prep</i> <i>Conj</i>	Has he been here <i>since</i> ? He has not come <i>since</i> last week I will come <i>since</i> you have asked me.
So	<i>Adv</i>	I am <i>so</i> glad

So	Conj	As you sow, so must you reap
Some	Adj	<i>Some</i> bread, <i>some</i> mangoes
	Pro	<i>Some</i> said yes, others, no
	Adv	<i>Some</i> twenty years ago
Still ✓	Noun	The <i>still</i> of the evening
	Adj	A <i>still</i> night
	Verb	He could not <i>still</i> the storm
	Adv	He is <i>still</i> at school
	Conj	<i>Still</i> , I am not convinced
Than	Prep	<i>Than</i> whom none higher sat
	Conj	Richer <i>than</i> wise
That ✓	Demon Adj	I like <i>that</i> man
<u>That</u>	Rel Pro	This is the best <i>that</i> I got
	Conj	He said <i>that</i> he would not do it
Then	Adj	He comes now and <i>then</i>
	Conj	If he does so, <i>then</i> you may go
Till	Prep	You can stay <i>till</i> next day
	Conj	Stay there <i>till</i> you are called
Too	Adv	It is <i>too</i> hot to drink
	Conj	I, <i>too</i> , am of the same opinion
Up	Noun	The <i>ups</i> and downs of life
	Adj	He went by the <i>up</i> train
	Adv	The eagle mounts <i>up</i>
	Prep	The cat ran <i>up</i> a tree
Well ✓	Adj	He is now <i>well</i>
	Adv	He has been <i>well</i> paid
	As Noun	Let <i>well</i> alone
What ✓	Inter Pro	<i>What</i> does he say?
<u>What</u>	Rel Pro	I do not know <i>what</i> you want
	Ad	<i>What</i> happy children!
	Inter	<i>What</i> ! are you here?
While ✓	Noun	Stay a little <i>while</i>
	Verb	Don't <i>while</i> away your time
	Conj	Work <i>while</i> day lasts
Why	Noun	He asks the <i>why</i> and the where!
	Adv	<i>Why</i> do you leave so early?
	Conj	I know <i>why</i> he did it
Will	Noun	Where there's a <i>will</i> there's a way
	Aux Verb	I <i>will</i> go to-morrow
	Prim Verb	He <i>wills</i> it to be so

SYNTAX

203 The third part of Grammar, SYNTAX, treats of the way in which words are joined so as to express thought. It deals, therefore, with the sentence and its various parts, and the relation the words of a sentence bear towards each other.

Syntax comes from a Greek word meaning *putting in order, or arrangement*.

The Rules of Syntax are of three kinds: (1) of CONCORD, (2) of GOVERNMENT, (3) of ORDER.

204 Concord is the agreement of words in respect of number, person, tense, or mood.

Concord means being of the same heart or mind.

When two words joined together are of the same number, gender, person, or tense, they are said to *agree* with one another.

The chief concords in English grammar are those of the verb with its subject, the Pronoun with the noun it stands for, and the relative with its antecedent.

205 Government is the power which one word has over the case or mood of another.

English has so few inflections that the rules of government apply principally to pronouns. The chief kinds of government are those of a transitive verb and its object, a preposition and a noun or pronoun.

206 Order is the giving to each word its proper place in the sentence.

The order of words in sentences is either *grammatical* or *rhetorical*.

Grammatical Order is that in which words are generally placed in speaking and writing.

Rhetorical Order is that in which the emphatic parts of the sentences are placed first.

For this reason the rhetorical order is also called the *emphatic*. It is used chiefly in poetry and in impassioned prose.

SUBJECT AND VERB

207 Rule I – *A Verb must agree with its Subject in Number and Person*, as, I write, thou readest, we speak

If the subject is singular, the verb must be singular. If the subject is in the first person, the verb must be in the first person, and so on.

The subject is known by putting the question *Who?* or *What?* to the verb. The noun next the verb is often not the subject.

208 When a verb is followed by several nominatives it usually agrees with the first, and is understood with the others, as, *Thine is the kingdom, the power, and the glory*

209 The subject of a verb is always in the **Nominative**, “Neither *him* nor *her* saw it,” should be, “Neither *he* nor *she* saw it.”

210 When the infinitive mood, participle, or a part of a sentence is the subject, the **Verb** should be in the third person singular, as, “*To obey is better than sacrifice*” “*Seeing is believing*”

211 In the imperative mood, the subject is generally omitted, *thou* or *you* being understood, but in other cases it should be mentioned. A Verb in the infinitive mood has no subject.

EXERCISE XXXII


Parse the following sentences —

The lion roars. Bombay is noted for its mangoes. The Romans destroyed Jerusalem. Krishna learns his lesson. Twelve years of my life have passed away. The motion of these little animals is very curious. To deceive is sinful. The heroes of the war have been rewarded. The school of experience teaches many useful lessons. Among the great blessings and wonders of creation may be classed the regularity of times and seasons. To rejoice in the welfare of our fellow-creatures is, in some degree, to partake of their good fortune.

Correct the following sentences —

The state of his affairs are very prosperous. The evils of life is numerous enough. Here comes the men. The pleasures of sin is short.

The eyes of the fly is very curious You was there too The pyramids of Egypt has stood more than three thousand years How do your new coat please you? A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye Was you at school to day? The leaves of the tree is falling No! says I It is one of the best books that has been written Him that is diligent will improve She and me are of the same age Who broke this slate? Me Them that seek wisdom will be wise To practise the virtues are the sure way to love them To honour our superiors is our duty To do to others as we wish that they should do to us, constitute the principle of virtue Some says that there has been a great many changes made in the staff lately.

212  Rule II — Collective Nouns are followed by verbs in the singular or the plural number according to the sense

If *oneness* is expressed, the verb must be *singular*, as, if the *individuals* of the collection are thought of, the verb must be *plural*, as, The council is sitting, The people are divided

213 Collective nouns having but one form, as, *mankind*, *clergy*, generally admit the plural only Those which have a plural form (which, of course, *always* takes a plural verb) generally take a singular verb with their singular form, as, The party is much divided, and has little influence, and, Parties are now nearly balanced, and therefore all their movements are cautiously made The army is in the field The combined armies were defeated

The Government is most frequently used in the plural The same is true also of *committee*, but the singular is preferable unless there is a difference of opinion

214 Nouns, whose singular is used with a plural signification, require the verb to be plural, as, Twenty head of cattle are for sale

215 Nouns which have a plural only, and do not imply unity, for the most part require the verb in the plural, as, Riches take to themselves wings and fly away Some nouns that are plural in form but do imply unity also take a singular verb, as *scissors*, *trousers*, *longs*, &c

216 Though the title of a book may be plural, the verb must be singular, as the work is spoken of as a whole. Thus, "The Pleasures of Hope" *is* by Campbell.

EXERCISE XXXIII

Parse the following sentences —

The youth in this country are not well educated. The British Parliament is composed of king or queen, lords and commons. The multitude eagerly pursue pleasure as their chief good. The crowd was soon dispersed. The fleet sails to-morrow. An army of ten thousand was sent to Madras. The assembly was addressed by several persons. The senate was by this time weary of war. Ten sail were taken.

Correct the following sentences —

This meeting do not recommend the plan. The number of failures increase. When the tiger appeared, the flock were scattered. The party were broken up. He said the sheep was so numerous that he could not count them. This class of persons are an example. The army were routed. Their riches makes them idle. The scissors is sharp. The tongue was heavy. What is the compasses? He used to wear a silk trouser. Dickens's "Household Words" are in the library. His collection of birds are the best I have seen. The company were broken up by the arrival of a stranger.

217 **Rule III.**—*Two or more Singular Nominatives joined by and require a verb in the plural*

As one and one make two, so two singular nouns are equal to one plural. Thus, Rama and Krishna *are* good students.

218 If the two singular nouns joined by *and* refer to the *same* person or thing, the verb must be *singular*, as, The general and historian *has* observed.

219 When two singular nouns coupled by *and* convey the idea of *one* thing, they require a singular verb, as, Curry and rice *is* wholesome, The horse and carriage *is* at the door. When, however, the things are spoken of as distinct, the plural must be used, as, Curry and rice *are* both good.

220 When two singular nouns are joined by *as well as*, the verb is singular, as, Rama as well as Krishna *is* here. In

full, the sentence would be, Rama is here as well as Krishna (is here)

221 A singular noun, joined to another noun by *with*, requires a verb in the singular, as, The General, with his troops, *was* there. Transposed, the sentence reads thus The General *was* there with his troops

222 A nominative preceded by *each*, *every*, or *no* (unless *no* be followed by a plural noun), requires the verb and pronoun to be in the singular, as, Every man *has* his failings, Each cow, sheep, and horse *was* sacrificed

223 When two or more nominatives of *different persons*, are joined by the conjunction *and*, the verb agrees with the *first* person in preference to the *second*, and with the *second* in preference to the *third*, as, You and he *have* received *your* reward

EXERCISE XXXIV

Parse the following sentences —

Ceylon and Java are islands. Both France and England are without the Torrid Zone. Energy and perseverance are the grand peculiarities of the Anglo-Saxon race. Honour and shame from no condition rise. The king, the queen, and the prince have arrived. Hannibal as well as Napoleon, crossed the Alps. Faith, hope and charity are cardinal virtues. Every man, woman and child was saved. The merchant, with all his goods, is leaving to-day. You and I must get our things ready for the journey. The guide, and not you, is to be blamed.

Correct the following sentences —

The picture, the slate, and the book, belongs to me. False hope and false terror is equally to be avoided. Both he and she is still there. You and I has been disappointed. Is your brother and sister at home? Copper and tin is soft metals. Sorrow and silence is strong. Happiness and misery is from within.

Hannibal, with his army, were able to cross the Alps. Each man and woman get food daily. Govind, as well as Krishna, were late. A knife and fork are ready for you. Heaven and earth seems to meet at the horizon. The Cape of Good Hope as well as the China Seas, are famed for hurricanes. They and I have lost my pens. Where are his bread and butter? Rama, and not you, deserve the prize.

224 Rule IV — *Two or more Singular Nominatives separated by or or nor require a verb in the singular*

Only one is signified, so the verb must be singular As, Either Rama or Krishna *is* wrong

225 Rule V — *When two or more Nominatives in different Numbers are joined by or or nor, the verb is in the plural, as, Rama or his friends *are* to blame*

The plural nominative should be placed next the verb

226 Rule VI — *When two or more Nominatives of different persons are joined by or or nor, the verb agrees with the one next it, as, Either you or he *is* to blame, Neither you nor I *am* to go*

227 Rule VII — *A Noun or a Pronoun joined to a Participle, without being connected with any other verb in the sentence, is said to be in the Nominative Absolute, as, Day dawning, we arose*

Absolute means loosed from, standing alone Such a clause is said to be *absolute*, because it stands alone, and the noun is said to be in the *Nominative Absolute* because it does not agree with any verb If a noun is the nominative to a verb, it cannot be in the Nominative Absolute, as, The gambler, having lost all his money, drowned himself

The noun or pronoun is sometimes left out or understood, as, Granting this, what follows? The participle in such a case has been called an *Impersonal Absolute* The participle is sometimes understood, as, Joy (*being*) absent, grief is present

228 Nouns in the Vocative Case, or Nominative of address, and in exclamations, are also nominatives absolute, as, *Govind*, come quickly, 'Alas! my poor country!' A nominative absolute is also frequently created when a sentence is inverted for rhetorical effect, as, He that is in the city, famine and plague shall devour him In this sentence *he* is a nominative absolute

If the sentence be written in the usual form it becomes "Famine and plague shall devour him that is in the city" The pronoun *he* thus drops out, and we see that in the rhetorical form it is a nominative *without grammatical relation* to any other word—i.e. a *Nominative Absolute*

EXERCISE XXXV

Parse the following sentences —

Neither youth nor beauty is a security against death. To court a friend in prosperity, or to forsake a friend in adversity, is mean and despicable. Neither precept nor discipline is so forcible as example.

Litlier your box or your books were burnt. Neither the leader nor his men were aware of what had taken place. Neither moon nor stars were seen.

The town being relieved, the enemy raised the siege. That being the case, I can make no objection. I tell you, that your son having thus wasted his time, has now no chance. I shall not lag behind, thou leading.

Correct the following sentences if necessary —

Either he or his brother were in Madras. To scorn or to hate are equally sinful. Your approbation or disapprobation affect him more than you imagine. Neither life nor property were respected. Man's happiness or misery depends chiefly upon himself. Neither the captain nor the sailors were saved. Neither riches nor health is to be depended on. Either they or I am in fault.

POSITION OF THE SUBJECT

229 Rule VIII — *The Subject or Nominative usually comes before the verb, as Rama struck Govind.*

In the case of transitive verbs, this position is necessary to distinguish the subject from the object.

230. The Nominative comes after the verb in the following cases —

(1) When the sentence is Interrogative, as, Will you go?

The nominative comes between the auxiliary and the verb. If there is no auxiliary, *do* or *did* is usually placed before the nominative, as, Did you write? Sometimes the verb is simply placed first, as, Lovest thou me? The latter form is always used with the verb *be*, as, Is he well? Were you there? With other verbs this form is seldom used.

In Urdu, &c., there is no difference in the arrangement of a sentence, whether it is interrogative or affirmative. Indian students sometimes make mistakes by not altering the arrangement in English. *Why you will go?* ought to be, *Why will you go?*

Another error is to omit the auxiliary *do* or *did* *Why you study English?* ought to be, *Why do you study English?* *Why he come yesterday?* ought to be, *Why did he come yesterday?*

But when the subject is an Interrogative Pronoun, it comes before the verb, as, *Who gave them?*

(2) When the sentence is Imperative, as, *Go ye* The subject is, however, generally omitted, as, *Run*

(3) In conditional clauses without *if*, as, *Had I seen him* I should certainly have spoken to him

(4) When the sentence begins with *there*, *here*, &c., as, *There was an uproar*

In such constructions *there* is not the adverb, *in that place* It has no meaning, and is used only to introduce the verb

(5) When *neither*, or *nor*, signifying *and not*, comes before the verb, as, *Nor was he mistaken*

(6) When a wish is expressed, as, *Long live the Queen!* *May you succeed!*

(7) In introducing the parts of a dialogue, as, "Will you come?" *said he*, "No," *replied Govind*, "I certainly will not"

(8) For the sake of emphasis, as, *Fallen, fallen is Babylon!* "Down went the Royal George, with all her crew complete"

(9) In poetry, as, *From out waste places comes a cry*
Great liberty is allowed in the position of words in poetry

EXERCISE XXXVI

Parse the following sentences —

Discontent always injures those who foster it. Virtue is its own reward, and vice its own punishment. True greatness consists in the possession of great virtues. Can you repeat your lessons? Shall I send him to school? Follow the customs of the world in matters indifferent, but stop when they become sinful. Faithful are the wounds of a friend, but the kisses of an enemy are deceitful. Never was man so tormented as I have been. There sits the author of all the mischief. "Come now," says he, "let us dine." "I wish," cried the boy's father, "that you would send him away." Had I considered the matter with greater attention, I might have given a different opinion.

Correct the following sentences —

What they are copying? Why you bring it? Why you brought it? How then, you came here? Why he goes so often? How to do this sum? What for he do this? How the carpenter does his work? Why you are going? Where these men come from? What the teacher said last night? In what book you read it? How much money you have? Your father is sick, is it? You came yesterday or not? Why you did come? How we can spend our time foolishly when we know that hereafter we must give an account of our thoughts, words, and actions? He were ever so great and opulent, this conduct would debase him. Was his pen good he would write more distinctly. His help long be yours! At what time the lesson begins? What is it you saying? I understand you not. After forsaking him in his difficulty how I shall ever look him in the face again? How shall I rejoice to see my country once more

CASE OF THE NOUN

231 Rule IX — *Nouns or Pronouns in apposition agree in Case*

Apposition comes from a word meaning *placed near*. Nouns referring to the same person, but not joined by a conjunction, are said to be in *apposition*, as, William the Conqueror. This form is used by way of explanation.

The words in apposition may be separated from each other, as, *He comes, the herald* of a noisy world.

232 A noun is sometimes put in apposition to a sentence or a part of a sentence, as, "Rama was very inattentive to his studies, *conduct* which greatly displeased his father."

233 Nouns and pronouns in apposition do not always agree in *number*, as, *They* went away, *every man* to his own house.

234 When the nouns in apposition are in the possessive case, the *s* and the apostrophe are used with only one of them, as, It is an essay of *Bacon's*, the *philosopher*, or *of Bacon, the philosopher's*. The former mode must always be adopted when the last term consists of several words.

EXERCISE XXXVII

Parse the following sentences —

Vālmiki, the author of the Ramayan, lived in ancient times I have read Milton's great work, *Paradise Lost* Columbus, the discoverer of America, was a native of Genoa London, the greatest city in the world, is built on the banks of the River Thames Xenophon, the soldier and historian, was a disciple of Socrates, the philosopher I shall see him myself They were drawn with seven oranges, a thing quite out of taste The Saxons, a German tribe, invaded England We have turned every one to his own way

Correct the following sentences where necessary —

Call at Smith's the hatter and drapers The plan was Pitt, the great politician and premier's The head was John's the Baptist The expression is Johnson, one of the grunts of literature's I have a letter of Cowper the poet's Those colours are the Victory, the flagship of Nelson's I have been reading an essay of Bacon, the lawyer, scholar, and philosopher's London's poor are not so badly housed and fed as Berlin's or New York's The words that stirred the multitude most were his who had till now been tongue-tied

235 Rule X — *A Noun denoting the possessor of an object must be put in the Possessive Case, as, Rama's book*

The possessive at first denoted mere possession, but it has gradually acquired a wider meaning, as, *Rama's marriage*

236 The possessive is seldom used except where the noun denotes a living being or personified object In the case of things without life, which cannot possess, the objective with *of* is used Thus we may say, *The lion's roar*, but not *the book's price* The latter ought to be, *the price of the book* The objective with *of* may be used with persons, especially where more prominence is given to the thing possessed than to the possessor, as, *the watch of Rama* has been stolen

The apostrophe and *s* is, however, used with nouns of time, space, and weight, as, *a year's notice*, *an hour's walk*, *a yard's length*, *a ton's weight* Also in many such expressions as *the sun's rays*, *the mind's eye*, *the law's delays*, *the river's bank*, *the country's good*, *duty's call*, &c And in a number of familiar phrases, such as, *at his*

fingers ends, at his wit's end, for pity's sake, for mercy's sake, to his heart's content, &c

237 When the thing possessed is described as the common property of several individuals the sign of the possessive is affixed only to the last-named possessor, as, *John, Thomas and Henry's estate*. When a separate possession is ascribed to each, the sign of the possessive is repeated, as, *John's Thomas's and Henry's estates*. When the possessor's name consists of more than one word the sign of the possessive is at the end, as, *William the Conqueror's, John the Baptist's, John of Gaunt's, Henry III's, the Duke of York's*.

When comparison or a particular emphasis is implied, or when words intervene between the series of nouns, the 's is used with each, as, *They are Jane's, as well as Mary's drawings, He had the physician's, the surgeon's, and the apothecary's assistance*.

The too frequent occurrence in a sentence of the possessive, or of the objective with *of*, is to be avoided. Too many hissing sounds are also objectionable, as, *for Moses's sake*, instead of *for the sake of Moses*.

The sign of the possessive is repeated when one possessive is used to qualify another, as, *Peter's wife's mother*.

238 When a long explanatory term occurs, 's is generally affixed to the name, or first term, as, *We stayed at Lord Ashley's, the ornament of his country, and friend of every virtue*.

239 A clause must not be interpolated between a possessive case and the name of the thing possessed. Thus, *She began to extol the farmer's, as she called him, excellent understanding*, should be, *She began to extol the excellent understanding of the farmer, as she called him*.

240 The possessive case is sometimes preceded by *of*, as, *That dog of Rama's is savage*. *Of Rama's* here is a double possessive, and does not imply that Rama has more than one dog.

In "That book is one of Rama's," it is implied that Rama has more than one book, and there is no double possessive. The sentence=That book is *one of the books* (which are) Rama's (see § 277).

241 A noun denoting a place, such as house, shop, &c, is generally omitted after the name of a person in the possessive case, unless it is the subject of a sentence. Thus, *I stayed at Mr Cooper's, I bought it at Oakes's*. But we cannot say *Mr Cooper's is a large one*, unless the word house, shop, &c, may be supplied from the previous part of the sentence, and in that case any noun may be omitted, as, *Mr Cooper's house is a large one, Mr Brown's is small, John's horse is a bay one, Robert's is black*.

242 When the possessor is the name of a city, &c, it sometimes takes the form of an adjective to *the thing possessed*, as, *A Calcutta merchant, The school fence*.

243 Rule XI — *Nouns or Pronouns denoting persons or things addressed are in the Vocative Case*, as, *O Rama*! The vocative is also called the Nominative of Address.

The first personal pronoun is excepted, being put in the objective, as, *Alas me*! The preposition *to* is probably understood.

244 Rule XII *Some Nouns are not used in the Plural, others are not used in the Singular*.

Material Nouns, or names of substances, are not used in the *plural* except when different *sorts* are meant, as, *This is oil, Some of these oils are good*.

Names of Qualities and some other nouns are generally used only in the *singular*, as, *goodness, pride, &c*. Mistakes are often made in India by giving plural forms to *furniture, poetry, information, &c*.

Proper Names are not used in the *plural* except when they are applied to several persons, as, *The twelve Cæsars*.

Some nouns are used only in the *plural*, as, *scissors, trousers, &c*.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

Parse the following sentences —

Now, my friend, let us go back to my house. There is no terror, Cassius, in your threats. Go, wondrous creature! Mount where science guides. Mourn him, thou Sun, great source of light! Hail, beauteous stranger of the grove! Ye hills of my country, farewell ever more. Alas, unhappy me! Cromwell I did not think to shed a tear.

Change the following sentences into the possessive form

The paintings of Reynolds, West, and Lawrence are greatly admired. The books of Thomas, John, and Henry are come. The oratory of Burke, Fox and Pitt, has been greatly lauded. Have you obtained the consent of your father and mother? The presence of the emperor, king, and prince, added dignity to the ceremony. He lost not only the confidence of the king, but at the same time that also of the Chancellor. I was guided not only by the advice of the surgeon and apothecary but also by that of the physician.

Correct the following sentences where necessary —

From mothers experience do thou learn wisdom. The poets genius would have immortalized the monarchs deeds. The scholars improvement is the master object. He rises as on eagle wings. We should not interfere with others affairs. The teachers learning commands the boys respect. They should have been attending to their friends affairs. The street's width is insufficient. The letter's envelope is torn. Thacker's, Spink's, and Company's bookselling establishment is very extensive. The house you so admire is John's, Alexander's, and William's.

I called at Longman, the well known publisher and bookseller's. These are Solomon, the celebrated sage, and king of the Jewish people's proverbs. I live at Rieburn, the celebrated portrait painter's. His fathers worth to say nothing of his uncle, has greatly assisted him. The Andromeda, not the Invincible, nor the Victory's crew, has been paid off.

It was his father's sister's son's house. Have you read the account of the General of the great battle? Of some of the books of each of the classes of literature, a catalogue will be given. The ship is commanded by Lord Raglan's cousin's nephew. The emperor's uncle's son's death was universally lamented. It happened that Moses's rod swallowed up the rest. He was appointed in Feh's room. Achilles was Pelus's son. This picture of the Queen's is a very striking likeness of her. Were you present at the sale of the pictures of the Queen?

Another trick of the lawyer has been detected. That adventure of the hero's has excited great astonishment. *The Task* is a poem of Cowper. The law of gravitation is a discovery of Sir Isaac Newton's. This arose from the Count associating with bad people, and was the cause of him losing office. The dislike originated in the queen intercepting certain letters. It occurred in consequence of the letter remaining unanswered. The house's door is open. An Amritsar's shawl merchant called to day.

I wish to buy some furnitures. They wear English coat and trouser. Potteries are made in Staffordshire. He give a deal of troubles. He came on some of his businesses. My circumstance is very miserable. Go to the market for some vegetable. Some say that to increase the liberties of women would tend to harm. He instilled proper notion into my mind. There was a great fall of rams. You should give charities to deserving beggars. Do you like potatoe? Milks are nourishing foods. Waters are best. This book contains beautiful poetries. Rama gave me many abuses.

THE ADJECTIVE

245 Rule XIII *Every Adjective qualifies a Noun, either expressed or understood, as, A high mountain*

Adjectives are used attributively, as, *Ripe* fruit, or predicatively, as, The fruit is *ripe*. An adjective may qualify a noun predicatively, not only after the verb *be*, but after such intransitive verbs, as, *look, seem, feel, taste, &c*, as, Ice feels *cold*, He seemed *wearry*. In all such cases the adjective completes the verbal idea and is a **Subjective Complement**.

After verbs of *making, thinking, considering*, an Adjective may be used factitively as well as predicatively, as, He *made* the little boy happy, We thought him mad.

Adjectives preceded by the definite article are often used by *ellipsis* as nouns, as, the *learned*, for *learned men*. The *beautiful*, &c.

When an adjective is changed into a noun, it may take either the plural or the possessive form, as, *nobles*, a *noble's* honour.

A noun is sometimes used as an adjective to qualify another noun, as, *A summer day*.

246 Rule XIV *The Comparative is used when the objects compared are two, the Superlative when they are more than two, as, He is the braver soldier of the two, This is the bravest soldier in the army*

Double comparatives and superlatives must be avoided, and comparison must never be attempted in the case of certain adjectives that do not admit of it, as, *complete, universal*. *Lesser*, however, is used even by the best authors.

When an individual of a class is compared with all the others of that class, either the superlative, or the comparative with *other*, may be used, as, *Solomon was the wisest of men*, or, *Solomon was wiser than other men*.

When different classes, or different individuals of the same class, are compared, the comparative is to be used, as, *Jane is taller than her sisters*.

247 Rule XV *The Comparative requires than after it when opposition is implied, but of when selection is signified, as, Peter is a wiser man than Thomas, Peter is the wiser of the two*

The words, *superior inferior, prior, anterior, posterior, senior, and junior*, take *to* instead of *than*, as, Rama's writing is *superior to* Govind's

The comparatives, *elder, former, latter, inner, outer, upper, nether* and *hindu*, are never followed by *than*. We do not say *John is elder than his brother James*. We may say *John is older than James*, or, *Of the two brothers John is the elder*. So, *His room is inner than mine*, would be wrong. We should say, *His is the inner room (and mine the outer)*

EXERCISE XXXIX

Parse the following sentences —

In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, the Italians were the only commercial people of Europe. Sulphur is a hard, brittle body, of a yellow colour, with little smell, and a weak taste. The way was long, the wind was cold, the minstrel was infirm and old. A profligate life leads to a miserable death. Few, few shall part where many meet. There are many ways of telling a secret. Of two such lessons why forget the nobler and the manlier one? In the worst inn's worst room. Gold is softer than iron, harder than tin, and more easily melted than copper. To tell a lie is mean and despicable. This edition is the better of the two. To confess a fault is better than to conceal it.

Correct any errors in the following sentences —

Of all the planets, Jupiter is the larger. Newton and Kepler were both great men, but Newton was the profoundest of the two. Australia is much larger than Great Britain, but the latter is far the most powerful. Throw away the worser part. He once saw more happier days. His horse was the swifter of all in the field. My father is elder than yours. The welfare of the soul is surely more preferable to that of the body. The tongue is like a race-horse, which runs the faster the lesser weight it carries. Whose fame is more universal than Alexander's? Your composition is more perfect than mine. John's specimen is the completest of all.

Express the meaning of the following sentences by means of the comparative —

Napoleon was the greatest of all modern European generals. Britain is the richest of all nations. London is the largest capital in Europe. Mary is the prettiest of the sisters. Mount Blanc is the highest mountain in Europe. The Missouri-Mississippi is the longest of rivers. Few men have ever been so patient as Socrates. Thackeray was the most popular novelist next to Scott. Asia is by far the greatest of the continents.

248 **Each, every, either, and neither,** require the verb to be in the singular, as, *Each witness gives a different statement*

The phrase "every three years" is allowable, being taken collectively as one period. **None**, being a compound of *no one*, is evidently singular, but it is sometimes used with a plural verb

Either and neither refer to two objects only, and cannot be applied to more, as, *Either of the two (not three) will suit*

249 **Any** has several meanings. After negative words, it marks the exclusion of *all*, as, You cannot get *any* allowance. So in questions expected to be answered by *none*, &c, as, Can *any* man believe this? *Any* is sometimes equivalent to *any who please*, as, *Any* body may go in. Sometimes *any* is equal to *some*, as, "Shall we tell *any one*?"

Any should not be inserted where it is not required. "It is of no use," ought to be, "It is of no use," or, "It is not of any use."

250 The demonstrative adjectives **this** and **that** agree in number with the nouns they qualify, as, *this* book, *these* books

251 When *this* and *that*, or *one* and *other*, or *former* and *latter*, refer to two objects previously spoken of, *this*, *one*, and *latter*, refer to the second of them, and *that*, *other*, and *former*, to the first. as, *Wealth* and *poverty* are both temptations, *that* tends to excite pride, *this*, discontentment

252 When two numeral adjectives, an ordinal and a cardinal, qualify a noun, the ordinal should be placed first when members of one class are spoken of, the cardinal when members of different classes are spoken of, as, The *first* three chapters of St. Luke's Gospel

253 The adjectives, *like*, *unlike*, *near*, *nigh*, and *next*, take objectives after them, as, like *him*, near *me*, next *us*. The preposition *to* is understood

POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE

254 Rule XVI — *The Adjective usually stands before the Noun which it qualifies*, as, a *swift* horse

255 The Adjective is placed after the Noun in the following cases —

(1) When it is *used predicatively* as the complement of the verb *be*, or of any other verb, as, Gold is *heavy*, He seems *happy*, They thought him *mad*, It made him *miserable*

Adjectives with the prefix *a* are used only predicatively, as, the man is *alive*, the woman is *afraid*. We cannot say the *alive* man, the *afraid* woman. These adjectives are *anecd*, *alike*, *alive*, *alone*, *asleep*, *awake*, &c. It applies also to a few others, as, *well*, but not to participles used as adjectives, as *abiding* rest

(2) When it is used as a title, as, Alexander the Great

(3) When qualified by words or phrases, as, A man *eminent* in his profession

(4) When it expresses number or size, as, An army ten thousand *strong*, a wall ten feet *high*

(5) When several adjectives qualify one noun they are sometimes placed after it, as, A king, *wise*, *just*, and *generous*

(6) The adjective, when it is emphatic, is sometimes placed at the beginning of a sentence, and at a distance from the noun, as, *Just* and *true* are all Thy ways

(7) In poetry either for the sake of rhythm or rhyme, the adjective may be freely placed after the noun, as —

We sat within the farm-house *old*
Whose windows looking o'er the bay,
Gave to the sea-breeze, *damp* and *cold*,
An easy entrance night and day

EXERCISE XL

Correct the following sentences —

Let each boy look after their books. Neither of them eat. Either of the plans are good. He was surrounded on every sides. He goes to England every two year.

(EXERCISE XL concluded)

Correct the following sentences —

Give me either of the five I did not hear a speech of any interest from either of the able members present in the house Did it injure any of his eyes? Neither of the three coolies have done much I shall gladly accept any of the two books you please

I have not seen him this six months Those kind of remarks are very hurtful These sort of people are not to be trusted He despise dancing, and all those sort of things It was deeds of these kind in which he delighted

The boy and the girl have been equally to blame, the first contrived the fault, and that committed it Virtue and vice are as opposite to each other as light and darkness, this ennobles the mind, the other debases it Britain has great advantages for commerce and manufactures, this is facilitated by the extent of her coast and the excellence of her harbours, and that by her inexhaustible supplies of iron and coal It is better to fall among crows than among flatterers, these devour the dead body only, this the living

A spirit temperate, and expectations moderate, are safeguards excellent of the mind, in this state uncertain and changing The Great Peter of Russia wrought in the dockyards as a ship carpenter He is a good and respectful scholar to his teacher This long room is twenty feet, and wide sixteen feet Aloof he kept

THE ARTICLE

256 Rule XVII — *The Indefinite Article is used with the Singular only, the Definite, with either number*

A or an is a weakened form of one They differ in meaning A points to *species*, or kind, and one to *number* Give me a pen, means that a pen is asked for,—not a book, but it may be any pen Give me one pen, implies that one is asked for,—not two or three

The is a weakened form of that It is the *defining*, or *marking out*, Article It is used to point out some particular person or thing Give me the pen, implies some particular one

257 Rule XVIII — *Every Common Noun in the singular requires an Article, or some such word as this, each, my, &c I saw cow, should be, I saw a cow, or, I saw the cow This box is broken, My cap is white*

258 Rule XIX —Articles are not used before proper nouns, common nouns personified, abstract nouns used in a general sense, and names of materials I saw *the* Rama, should be, I saw Rama, Conscience pleads her cause, Gold is heavy

Proper nouns point out some particular person, therefore the indefinite article could not be used, as it indicates *one of a class*, and the definite article is not needed

Exceptions

259 Common nouns in the singular, used in a general sense, do not require an article, as, *Man is mortal*

260 Proper nouns used as common, abstract nouns and names of materials used in a particular sense, require an article, as, *Valmiki was the Homer of India, the industry of Govind, the gold of Australia*

The is generally used before the names of books, unless they bear the names of persons, as, *the Bible, the Koran, the Vedas, Hamlet, Saluntala* When the author's name is mentioned, we may say *the Hamlet of Shal espeare, or Shal espeare's Hamlet*

The is used before the names of ships, as, *the Victoria*

261 The usage with regard to Geographical Names is irregular The following general rules may be given —

(1) The definite article should generally be placed before the names of rivers, gulfs, seas, oceans, groups of islands, mountain ranges, and descriptive names of countries, as, *the Ganges, the Persian Gulf, the Arabian Sea, the Andaman Islands, the United States*

(2) The definite article, as a rule, should not be placed before the names of continents, countries, capes, single islands or mountains, unless some descriptive term is used, as, *Asia, India, Cape Comorin, Ceylon, Vesuvius* But we say *the Punjab, the Mysore, the Sahara, &c*

262 The Indefinite Article, as a rule, is only used with *singular* nouns, but it may be used with *collective* and *plural* nouns, when the numbers are taken as one, as, *an army, a hundred men, a few mangoes, a great many people*

The numeral *one* cannot be used instead of the indefinite article *One tiger went into one jungle*, ought to be, *A tiger went into a jungle*

270 When two or more nouns refer to the same person or thing, the article is ordinarily used with the first only, as, *Cæsar, the Consul and Dictator, was killed in the Senate* but when they refer to different persons or things, it is placed before each, as, *The Duke of Newcastle, the Commander of the Forces, and the Secretary for War, were all to blame*

The article may however be repeated in the first case for purpose of emphasis, as, "Xenophon, the historian, the warrior, and the philosopher, had few equals" The force of this sentence would be that Xenophon excelled in each of these characters

271 When two or more names referring to the same person or thing follow a comparative, the article is used before the first only, as, *He is a better singer than dancer* When they refer to different persons or things, the article is used with each, as, *He is a better statesman than a soldier*, that is, "He is a better statesman than a soldier would be"

272 When in a series of nouns some would require *a*, and others *an*, the article *must* be repeated with each, as, *A duke, an earl, and a marquis were present*, not, *A duke, earl, and marquis* And though the omission of the article before all nouns but the first is justifiable if in every case it is in the same form (*a*, or *an*), its repetition is preferable, as, "A barque, a yacht, a schooner, and a steamer were anchored in the roads"

273 The insertion of the indefinite article before the adjectives *few*, *little*, *slight*, and similar words, sometimes effects a material change of meaning, as, *He has little money*, means he has *very little*, *He has a little money*, means that he has, at least, *some* So, *He shows slight improvement* is negative in its force, *a slight improvement*, positive

Again, the two phrases, *half a rupee* and *a half rupee* are both correct, but the meaning is different Half a rupee might be composed of copper coins, a half rupee is the silver coin of that value

POSITION OF THE ARTICLE

274 Rule XX — *The Article precedes the Noun to which it belongs, as, A horse When the noun is qualified by an adjective, the article usually precedes both, as, A white horse*

Exceptions

(1) The *indefinite article* follows *many, such, what*, and adjectives preceded by *too, so, as*, and *how*, as, Many *a* man, It was *such a* fine day, What *a* fraud! He made *too great an* effort, *so great a* crowd! As cheap *a* house as can be found, I saw how great *a* mistake I had made

(2) The *definite article* is placed after the adjectives *all* and *both*, as, All *the* people came, Both *the* soldiers were shot

(3) The definite article follows the noun when an adjective used as a title also follows it, as, Peter *the* Great

EXERCISE XLII

Correct, or justify, the following sentences —

A brave man and an accomplished officer published his account of the siege A small and large bear were shot A green and a yellow bird was caught I bought a red and white cow it cost ten pounds A red and white cow are in the field

The pious and the learned Newton was there The General, Admiral, Ambassador, and Consul, met for consultation He has a slate, hour-glass, book, and pen The young and old, the learned and ignorant, the prince and peasant, are liable to misfortune The Captain lost a leg and arm Bring a pen, book, and inkholder

Demosthenes was a better speaker than a soldier Vitellius was more renowned as an epicure than an Emperor I consider him a greater rogue than a fool

He has a few good qualities He has few good qualities A few men are wiser than he is He is a good boy, but sometimes needs little correction I have small claim against you You have a small claim on my regard

A many man has done the same Never had I seen a so large elephant before He is much better a writer than reader A many a man has attained independence by industry and perseverance Do not entertain a too high opinion of yourself I am ashamed to tell how a great mistake I have committed

A such trifle deserves no thanks That would be a too dangerous attempt He returned all books he stole I have received from him many favour It is too large book for him to read through

THE PRONOUN

275 Rule XXI —Pronouns agree with the Nouns for which they stand in Gender, Number, and Person, as, Rama has hurt *his* hand, The lady has lost *her* glove, The scholars have neglected *their* studies

In many languages (*e g*, Urdu) possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns that follow them Not so in English My sister lost *their* books, ought to be, My sister lost *her* books

276 *Thou* is now seldom used except in addressing God, or in poetry *You* is applied even to one person, but the verb must be plural

The same form of the pronoun should be preserved throughout a sentence *Thou* and *you*, *thy* and *your*, should not be interchanged

Hindi has only one pronoun, *wah*, for *he*, *she*, *it*, and *that*, and such is also the case with some other Indian languages In English, the distinction between *he*, *she*, and *it* must be observed

The subjective personal pronoun is sometimes omitted in languages in which the person is sufficiently indicated by the termination of the verb The verb *came* in English would be indefinite

277 *My*, *thy*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their*, are used when placed before nouns, as, *My* book *Mine*, *thine*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, are equivalent in signification to the possessive pronoun plus the noun understood

My, &c, are thus strictly *possessive adjectives*, *Mine*, &c, *possessive pronouns* The latter are used to avoid the continued repetition of nouns, as, Whose house is that? It is *mine* (= my house) These books are *ours* (= our books), *yours* (= your books) are on the shelf

In such expressions as, "That horse of *yours* is vicious," *of yours* is a double possessive "Two horses of mine were killed," is not an equivalent of "Two of my horses were killed," for the latter implies that I have more than two

278 The pronoun *it*, when the nominative to a verb, may be applied to each of the three persons in both numbers, as, *It* was *I*, *it* is *she*, *it* was *they*

It sometimes represents a phrase or clause that follows as, It is our duty to forgive our enemies, It is reported that the ship has gone down

In this case it is a **Preparatory Nominative**, the true nominative being the phrase or clause for which it stands. Sometimes the reference is to a preceding phrase or clause, as, *You can tell him, but I do not advise it* (to tell him)

It is often used for some object understood, as, *It* (the weather) runs. He gets the worst of *it* (the business)

The adverb *there* is used in a similar way to introduce the subject of a sentence, as, *There was once a king, &c*

279 When strong emphasis is required, both the noun and its pronoun may be used as nominative to the verb, as, *Wisdom, that is the principal thing*

280 When two or more singular nominatives are coupled by *and*, the pronoun representing them must be plural, as, *He and I have settled the matter, and we shall not again disturb it*. When they are connected by *or* or *nor*, the pronoun is generally singular, but sometimes, when they are taken in a collective sense, it is plural, as, *Neither he nor I was gratified by the attention we received*

When a pronoun represents a collective noun, it may be either singular or plural, but not both in the same sentence

Monarchs, and editors of periodical publications, generally use the plural instead of the singular pronoun, in the first person, as, *We print in another column letters which have reached us, &c*

281 The pronoun of the third person is placed after that of the second, and the pronoun of the first person after those of the second and the third, as, *You and I will go, Shall it be given to you, to him, or to me?* But in confessing a fault the speaker may place himself first

282 The interrogative pronouns, *who*, *which*, and *what*, are used as follows — *Who* is applied to *persons* and is *indefinite*. *Who* did it? supposes ignorance of the person. *Which* applies both to *persons* and *things*, but to one or more out of a known number, as, *Which will you take?* *What* is applied to *things*, and is *indefinite*, as, *What do you want?* When it refers to persons, it is followed by a noun, as, *What man told you?*

283 The word which answers a question must be in the same case as that which asks it, as, *Whose pen is this?* *John's* The reason of this may be shown by completing the sentence The full answer is, *This is John's pen*

EXERCISE XLIII

Parse the following sentences —

Every good act will receive its reward Neither he nor his friends have interested themselves in this subject Tell that man that he must go The rose is sweet, but it is surrounded with thorns Were the man to acquire riches, they would corrupt his mind The duchess brought her son to the assembly, but when she saw that it was too late, she fled with him to England He and she went away this morning, after they had visited their father

Supply the omitted pronouns —

The ships have sailed to destination I commit these youths to your care, trusting will prove diligent Is this the path? and does lead out of the wood? When the soldier had completed years of service was discharged The book is not injured, though has been tossed about The crowd was so great that I could hardly get through When you see any one busy, do not interrupt If the goods are ready, let me have as soon as possible The Long Parliament it was that made war on Charles I, but remaining members restored Charles II

Correct the following errors —

You is the person who took my book That mangoes are his Yours obedient son My father has sold its house This fine flowers are for you Your pen is in my box, shall I bring? Rama is going, shall I call? My sister knows, shall I ask? Having said so, went away

He is he would have betrayed me They should know that they are their interests we are consulting He is the king who said it Neither I nor you has done my duty Either he or I must resign my office Neither my brother nor cousin have been unmindful of their affairs

The fleet was speedily at its destination but they did not remain there long The Committee has met, but the business it has to do will not occupy them long The House of Commons were summoned to meet on Thursday, when it continued in deliberation till twelve at night, without deciding on the question before them The meeting was dissolved soon after they assembled I and you will remain If Tullia and you are well, I and Cicero are well I and my father are going to England I and you and Govind will come The teacher invited me and him Who of these boys broke it? Who did it? It was me Which things did you bring? Them things Whom did you meet on the Esplanade? He and she

284 Rule XXII — *A Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person*, as, *the man who works*, *the bullock which strayed*

The case of the relative is determined by some word in its own sentence, as, I saw the man who called to-day, I saw the man whom you spoke of

285 Relative Pronouns have two uses —

(1) The **Restrictive** use, as, I dare do *all that may become a man* In this case the relative is used to limit or define the antecedent, which would otherwise express too much or too little

(2) The **Conjunctive** use, as, He gave me an axe, *which I found useful* Here the relative introduces an additional statement or co-ordinate sentence The relative *which* might here be replaced by *and it* He gave me an axe, *and I found it useful* This is also called the **Co-ordinative** use of relatives

Who is applied to persons, *which*, to infants, inferior animals, and things without life

286 *That* is used instead of *who* or *which* —

(1) After adjectives in the superlative degree, as, This is the best *that* I saw

(2) After the adjective *all* and a few others, as, All is well *that* ends well

(3) After the interrogative pronoun *who* as, *Who that* has sense will agree with him

(4) After two antecedents, one requiring *who* and the other *which*, as, The men and the cattle *that* we met

(5) After a noun whose gender is doubtful, as, The friend *that* you saw has left

That, as a relative, does not admit of a preposition before it If it is governed by a preposition, the preposition is placed at the end of the sentence, as, This is the house *that* I live *in*, The conclusion *that* every one thought the Committee had arrived *at*

287 When the antecedent is a part of a sentence, the relative is in the third person, singular number, and neuter gender, as, He dislikes trifles, *which* I am glad to hear

238 Collective nouns require *which* when they are followed by a singular verb, and *who* when followed by a plural verb, as, *The faction which had long prevailed was at last overthrown, The clergy who assembled were then dispersed*

289 When no nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is generally the nominative to the verb, as, *The boy who brought the book is gone*

But if a nominative comes between them, the relative is generally governed in the objective, either by a preposition before, or a verb after it, as, *The title by which he is best known, The boy, whom you sent for, is come*

The relative pronoun is also often governed in the possessive by a noun following it, as, *Do not trust him whose promises have often been broken*

290 When the relative pronoun is preceded by two nominatives of different persons, the real antecedent must be learned from the meaning of the sentence, as, *I am the man who command, or, I am the man who commands*, the former being equivalent to, *I the commander am the man*, and the latter to, *I am the commander*

291 *Which* is properly used for *who*, when the antecedent to the latter is repeated, or when it is asked, interrogatively, *Who*, of a certain number, is spoken of, as, *His former companion, which companion had deceived him Which of them did it? Which is the man?*

292 The Relative, when in the objective case, and used restrictively, is sometimes omitted, especially in short sentences, as, *I received the book you sent me* The antecedent of the third person is also occasionally omitted, as, *Who will, may weep*

293 *As* is used as a relative after *such* and *same*, as, *Such as came, Mine is the same as yours* But *is* a relative when it means *that not*, as, *No child but screamed*

Position of Pronouns

294 Rule XXIII — *The Relative usually stands immediately after the Antecedent*, as, *The man who came*.

When the sense clearly shows the antecedent, other words are sometimes interposed, as, *There is a prisoner, now sick, who needs your help*.

295 The objective case of an interrogative pronoun precedes the verb, as, *Whom do you seek?*

Where there are two objects, both pronouns, the neuter stands first, as, *Give it me*.

In both these cases the pronoun takes a different position from that which the noun would occupy, as —

Are you seeking your friend?

Whom are you seeking?

Did you ask him for a pen?

For what did you ask him?

Give me the book.

Give it me.

EXERCISE XLIV

Parse the following sentences —

Our best friends are those who tell us of our faults, and teach us how to correct them. I acknowledge that I am the teacher who adopts that sentiment, and maintains the propriety of such measures. Choose what is most fit. custom will make it most agreeable. Caesar destroyed the liberty of his country, which was the cause of his death. I think it was Socrates, who, passing through the market, cried out, "How much is here I do not want!" The days that are past, are gone for ever, those that are to come, may not come to us, only the present time is ours, let us, therefore, improve it as much as possible. Is this the same person that you spoke of before?

Supply Pronouns in the following —

The boat sails. Thou knowest it. I speak to you. They seem to take the sun out of the world, the friendship out of it. Let the prize be given to him, deserves it. This example is one of those are not to be imitated. do you think was there? The infant was sick has recovered. This is the officer commanded the party. I shall send the latest model. I can find Who can help himself will submit to such treatment? Newton

is the greatest philosopher the country has produced He is the same
published the poem He drives the finest horse you ever saw
The men and the measures you condemn are generally approved of

He has resolved to be a soldier, has caused us much grief He is neither over exalted by prosperity, nor too much depressed by misfortune
, you must allow, marks a great mind The Court, should have set a good example, indulged in vice The family with
I have long resided is gone to Anstruther He, on we relied, has deceived us did the coach run over? He had the suspicion on some one, I know not shall we send on this errand? Men generally hate him they fear

Supply the omitted relatives or antecedents in the following examples —

He knows the man I spoke of The poems Cicero wrote are lost
It was the saddest scene I ever witnessed Lord Mahon wrote the History you were reading Have you bought the book I recommended?
Did you see the man I referred you to? Who lives to nature rarely can be poor Who seizes too rapidly drops too hastily Who lives to fancy never can be rich Whom he would he slew, and whom he would he kept alive

Correct the arrangement in the following sentences —

I sold the horse for a small price, which I bought last year He has certainly shown himself not to be a friend who has done this The lesson has brought down severe punishment on him, which was so ill prepared He is like a beast of prey that is void of compassion Bring me it You call whom?

THE VERB

296 Rule XXIV — Transitive Verbs govern the Objective case, as, I found *him* assisting *them*

The *object* of a transitive verb may be a noun, as, A hunter shot a *tiger*, a pronoun, Rama struck *me*, an infinitive, Learn to *labour*, a gerund, He loved *hunting*, or a part of a sentence, I acknowledge *that he is right*

As a general rule, the object *should always be expressed*

297 Intransitive verbs often take after them an objective case similar in meaning to the verb, as, *He runs a race*
This is called the **Cognate Object**, or **Cognate Accusative**

298 Such transitive verbs as *give, ask, forgive, offer, promise, tell, &c*, take two objectives, a direct and an indirect. The latter generally denotes some person, and always comes first. In most cases the direct object may be put first, but the indirect object must then be preceded by a preposition, and its true nature, which is really adverbial, is made apparent.

I gave *him* a mango

I gave a mango *to him*

He asked *me* a question

He asked a question *of me*

He offered *them* a rupee

He offered a rupee *to them*

The passives of such verbs usually take the *direct object* as their subject, as, A mango was given to him by me. Sometimes, however, the indirect object becomes the subject, as, *He* was given a mango by me.

299 Some verbs, such as *appoint, believe, call, create, make, think, &c*, when taken alone do not always contain the whole verbal idea. They are then called Verbs of incomplete predication, and require another word to complete them. This is called the Complement, and may be a noun, an adjective, a participle, the infinitive mood, a prepositional phrase or a clause.

The complement of a transitive verb expresses a quality or condition of the object as accruing from the action of the verb. Such complements are therefore Objective Complements, and are often called Factitive Objects (*factum* = made). Unlike the indirect object, the factitive object always follows the direct object of the verb.

The complement of an intransitive verb is a Subjective Complement, as it expresses a quality or condition of the subject.

Objective Complements (Factitive Objects)

They made him *king*. They painted the house *green*. His generosity makes us all *his friends*. Ruskin thought Turner *the only artist who could paint the sky*.

Subjective Complements

He is *king*. The house looked *green*. He continued *speaking*. Napoleon was *the greatest general of his age*.

300 Some verbs are both transitive and intransitive, as, *The wheel turns, He turns the wheel, Tobacco grows, They grow tobacco* In such cases the transitive verb is used in a causal sense

Intransitive verbs also become transitive when they have a *Cognate Object*, as, *He sleeps the sleep of death*

Intransitive verbs, as, *fall, lie, rise, sit, &c*, must not be used for their corresponding transitive verbs, *fall, lay, raise, set, &c*, as, *It lays on the table*, instead of *It lies*

301 A large number of intransitive verbs when used with a particular preposition acquire a transitive sense As they can then be used in the passive, the Verb + Preposition may be regarded as a transitive verb Such verbs are called **Prepositional Verbs**

The cat *pounced upon* the mouse

The mouse *was pounced upon* by the cat

Some one must have *connived at* the theft

The theft must *have been connived at* by some one.

EXERCISE XLV

Parse the following sentences —

My father sent him and me to assist you Whom do you think I met yesterday when going home? Him and them we know, but who art thou? They who ridicule the wise and good are dangerous companions, they bring virtue itself into contempt Cyrus, when young, being asked what was the first thing which he learned, answered, "To speak the truth" To maintain a steady and unbroken spirit of mind amidst all the shocks of the world, marks a great and noble spirit They who have nothing to give, can often afford relief to others, by imparting what they feel To see young persons who are courted by wealth and pleasure, resist all the allurements of vice, and steadily pursue virtue and knowledge, is cheering and delightful to every good mind Silver and gold have I none He is a man whom I greatly esteem The city is four miles in circumference The book cost three rupees His father stands six feet high He lived three years in Calcutta The wall is a mile long I paid him sixteen rupees He taught me astronomy He refused me the favour Tell me the truth He showed me the picture I was promised the appointment They were forbidden the privilege

Change into the Passive *such of the foregoing sentences as admit of it*

Correct the following errors —

Thou, my kind friend, I shall never forget. You should punish him who committed the fault, not I who am innocent. They who have laboured to make us wise and good we ought especially to respect. I, who have been to him like a parent, he rudely insulted. She and they I know, but who are you? They acted properly in defending themselves. She that does not guard her reputation, all prudent persons will avoid. Come, let us make a covenant, I and thou. Lie the book on the table. He never was known to swerve the right path. Sit it up against the wall. His defalcations were connived.

Form short sentences in which the following verbs will have, in some, a transitive, in others an intransitive sense — break, burn, drink, eat, move, ride, turn, walk

Position of the Object.

302 Rule XXV — *The Object is usually placed after the verb*, as, *Gopal struck Krishna, He wishes to learn*

The order differs in English from that of the Indian vernaculars. In English, the governing word usually *precedes* the word governed, in the Indian vernaculars, it is *placed after it*. In the Indian vernaculars the arrangement of a sentence is as follows —

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Object</i>	<i>Verb</i>
Gopal	Krishna	struck

In English, this might mean, Gopal struck Krishna, or Krishna struck Gopal. Hence the arrangement is—(1) *Subject*, (2) *Verb*, (3) *Object*

Exceptions — The object precedes the verb in the following cases —

(1) When the object is a relative or an interrogative pronoun, as, This is the boy *whom I saw*, *Whom do you seek*?

A noun may be attached to the relative or interrogative pronoun, as, *Which book do you choose*?

(2) When emphasis is required, as, *Money you shall have*

303 Rule XXVI — *The Verb To be*, and all other intransitive verbs of incomplete predication, such as *seem*, *appear*, &c, *have the same case after them as before them*, and when the verb is finite this is always the nominative, as, *I am he*, *I took Rama to be him*

This arises from the fact that with finite forms of the verb the verbal complement is *attributive to the subject* and must therefore agree with it. The verb simply connects the subject and the predicate (with a greater or less degree of certainty, *seems, appears, is*), and is therefore called the *copula* or *link*. In the Indian vernaculars the copula is often omitted, but this is not allowable in English.

Nouns and pronouns before or after the verb *to be* are not necessarily of the same number and person, as, *It was they*, *You are he* whom we looked for.

When no case precedes the verb *to be*, the case following it is in the nominative, as, *To be an honest man* is better than to be a rich *man*.

In conversation, "It is me," is justified by custom.

EXERCISE XLVI

Parse the following sentences —

China is the most populous country in the world. Iron is the most useful metal. Were I he, I would act a different part. It could not be he whom you suppose. His death was felt to be a great loss. Pride was not made for man. The love of country is a noble feeling. The camel is found in many of the hot parts of Asia and Africa. Was it he or his brother who called? I think it was he. The carpenter seems an industrious man. The lawyer was appointed judge. His action was in bad taste. He is without fear. He seems in excellent health. It is hard that he should be so soon forgotten. Let them take him to be whom they will, it will make no difference.

Correct the following errors —

It is her. You believed it to be he. I suppose it to have been he who told you. Believe me it was not us. Are thou proud? Ay, that I am not thee. I know not whether it were them who committed the crime, but I am certain it was not him. It appeared to be her that opened the letter. She is the person who I understand it to have been. Who do you think me to be? Let him be who he may, we do not care. I understood it to be he who was suspected. It was them whom we saw.

304 Rule XXVII — *A verb may be governed in the infinitive mood by another verb, by an adjective, or by a noun*, as, *He loves to study*, *He is not able to work*, *I have a wish to learn*.

The *present infinitive* may be used with any tense of the governing verb as, He *wishes to go*, he *wished to go*, he *will wish to go*

The *perfect infinitive* expresses an action completed *before* the time denoted by the governing verb, as, You seem *to have failed* Used after the past tenses of verbs expressing *wish, hope, intention, &c*, it denotes that the wish or hope was not fulfilled, as, I intended *to have come* (but was hindered)

The *gerundial infinitive* is used to mark a purpose, it is also used after nouns and adjectives as, *He came to see*, *A time to laugh*, *Swift to hear* The gerundial infinitive always requires *to*, and may be considered a *dativæ causæ*

The simple infinitive is treated like a noun in the nominative or objective, as, *To read* is pleasant (nom), he began *to read* (obj)

The infinitive is sometimes used *absolutely*, as, *To speak* plainly, I do not believe it

305 The preposition *to* is not essential to the infinitive *To* is dropped after the auxiliaries, *can, do, may, must, shall, will*, after *bid, dare* (except in the sense of *challenge*), *let, make, need*, after several verbs referring to the senses, as, *see, behold, watch, hear, feel, &c*, as, *Bid him depart, I dare not do it, Make them sit down, I heard him speak, I dared him to do it*

But if the infinitive follows a passive form of any of these verbs (except *let*) *to* is required, as, *He was seen to strike the blow, He was let go* The verb *to be* generally requires *to*, as, I see *it to be so*

When several verbs in the infinitive are coupled by a conjunction, the sign *to* is usually prefixed to the first only, as, *I taught him both to read and write*

306 The infinitive is changed into a verbal noun governed by a preposition after the verbs *prevent, hinder, think, despair*, and after *fond, &c* Thus, I despair *to succeed* should be, I despair *of succeeding* He is fond *of reading*

307 The infinitive mood generally follows the word which governs it, as, He loves *to learn*, I shall *go*, but when it is the emphatic word, it sometimes precedes it, as, *Do it* you must

EXERCISE XLVII

Parse the following sentences —

It is more pleasant to pardon than to punish. It is more blessed to give than receive. England expects every man to do his duty. They showed great anxiety to be reconciled. I was induced to grant his request. He was asked to call at another time. His willingness to obey his parents was very pleasing. His enemies declared him to be a traitor. The master prevented his servant from doing the work. I shall write to him to come to-morrow.

Correct the following errors —

They forced him do the work. I thind to go home during the holidays. The sight made him to tremble. He is very fond to read novels. I requested him to do it, but he bade another to do it. I durst not do anything which might displease him. You need not to ask any more. Bid the peon to procure it. Would they have us to reject such an offer? The multitude wondered when they saw the lame to walk and the blind to see. Did you feel the table to shake in consequence of the earthquake?

The comets have been observed move in very eccentric orbits. Queen Elizabeth was known possess great vigour of mind. No nation has been found excel Greece in the fine arts. The prisoner was immediately let to go. We saw the lightning to flash.

- { Make five sentences with an Infinitive Mood as Subject
- { Make five sentences with an Infinitive Mood as Object
- { Make five sentences with the Infinitive Passive without to

308 Rule XXVIII — *The Gerund in -ing is both a noun and a verb. As a noun, it is governed by a verb or preposition, as a verb, it governs nouns or pronouns, as, Reading is pleasant, He intended killing him.*

The Gerund denotes the doing of that which the verb signifies. As a noun, it may be the subject, object, or complement of a verb, or be governed by some preposition. *Hunting* is a favourite sport. He enjoyed *hunting* the tiger. He was *hunting*.

309 When the preceeds the Gerund in -ing, of must follow it, or both the and of must be omitted, as, He is well placed for *the rapid gaming of* experience, or, for *gaming* experience rapidly. In the former case *gaming* is a

verbal noun, and as such is qualified by an adjective. In the latter, it retains its verbal force, governing *experience* and being qualified by an adverb. It is thus a true *Gerund*.

310 Rule XXIX — *The Participle is both a Verb and an Adjective, (just as the Gerund is both a Verb and a Noun) As a verb it may govern a noun, and as an adjective it may qualify a noun or pronoun, be modified by an adverb, or be compared, as—*

Respecting ourselves, we shall be *respected* by others

A *loving* son A *forsaken* land

We first attended to our *more pressing* wants

This is the *most finished* picture in the collection

The participle differs from an adjective in having changes to show whether the action is finished or unfinished

The participle is sometimes used absolutely with the nominative case before it, or adverbially at the beginning of a sentence, as, *The day dawning*, we set out, *Generally speaking*, the remainder is worthless

311 Rule XXX — *The Participles are used after the verbs have and be, to form tenses of the finite verbs, as, I have written, He was chosen*

(1) The Perfect tenses of the Active are formed from the past participle with *have*, as, *I have struck, I had struck, I shall have struck*. These express *completed* action

(2) The Imperfect, or Continuous, tenses of the Active are formed from the present participle with *be*, as, *I am sinking, I was sinking, I shall be sinking*. These express action *in progress*

(3) The tenses of the Passive are formed from the past participle with *be*, as, *I am struck, I was struck, I had been struck, &c*

The past participle should not be used for the past tense, as, *He begun*, for *he began*, *He run*, for *he ran*

Use of the Tenses

312 Rule XXXI — *In the use of the Tenses of Verbs, the order of time must be observed*

The Present Indefinite has several uses —

(1) It expresses a *single* act at the present time, as, *I see him now*,

(2) It expresses custom or habit, as, *Birds fly*

(3) It expresses constant truths, as, Honesty *is* the best policy

(4) It is used in quoting authors, whether living or not, as Cicero *says*

(5) It is sometimes employed to describe past events, and is then called the *Historic Present*, as, Caesar *leaves* Gaul, &c

(6) It can relate to some *future* event, provided that future time is expressed by some special adverb or phrase, or is implied by the context, as, It *leaves* (= will leave) in a few days, When do you *sail* (= will you sail) for England?

The **Present Imperfect or Continuous** is used to express an action going on at the time of speaking, as, *I am writing*. As its name implies, it is used only for actions that *continue*, and not for such as are brief and immediate. It also sometimes expresses habit or custom, as, *He is attending* college very regularly just now.

The **Present Perfect** expresses an action begun in past time and completed at the present time. "*I have lived* in Calcutta five years," implies that the speaker is still living in Calcutta. Should he have left Calcutta, the **Past Indefinite** should be used. *I lived* in Calcutta five years. The present perfect expresses action that has just been completed, as, The man *has come*.

The Present Perfect is never qualified by any adverb or phrase denoting *past* time. The former denotes *present* time, so that the two contradict each other. *I have finished* my exercise yesterday, should be, *I finished* my exercise yesterday.

The Present Perfect may be used if the effect still continues, as, British rule *has endured* in India for the last 150 years.

The **Past Indefinite** expresses an action begun and completed in past time, as, He *came* yesterday. It also denotes what was usual at some former time, as, He *gambled and drank*.

The **Past Imperfect, or Continuous** expresses an action begun and *continuing* in past time, as, While I *was speaking*, &c. The past indefinite refers to a *point* of time. The past imperfect is used to express an action during which something else took place, as, While I *was walking* yesterday, I saw you.

The **Past Perfect, or Pluperfect**, denotes that the action was completed *before* a certain time, and before something else took place, as, The ship *had sailed* before I arrived.

The **Future Indefinite** expresses simply future time, near or remote, as, It *will be completed* in a few minutes, It *will take* many centuries.

The **Future Perfect** denotes that the action will be completed before another future action takes place, as, I *shall have sailed* before you reach Calcutta.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

Parse the following sentences —

I hate lying In keeping Thy commandments there is great reward We reached the gate before him by taking a shorter road He succeeded by begging the help of his friends Poverty turns our thoughts too much upon the supplying of our wants, and riches upon enjoying our superfluities These travellers' tales awakened an unconquerable passion for wandering and seeking adventure I spent the year in visiting my friends By thinking on the passage, you will ascertain its meaning

He is a most loving child Leaning my head upon my hand, I began to figure to myself the miseries of confinement Overcome by his father's kindness, he burst into tears I hear soldiers marching, bullets flying, horses neighing His impaired strength rendered him unequal to the exertion Looking at the whole case, I do not take your view

Correct the following errors —

By roaring of the lion we were kept in alarm The preparing the statement requires time The middle station of life seems most advantageous for gaining of wisdom The acquiring anything valuable demands perseverance In tracing of his history we find little that is worthy of imitation By the observing truth you will command esteem

He has broke his leg He would have went with us had he been asked I would have wrote to him The bullock was stole The English language is spoke in many parts of the world He shown me the prize The grass was trod down The work was very well execute He drunk the water eagerly He has chose to give up study His friends have forsook him

Make four sentences, each with a gerund as subject, and four with a gerund as object

Make four sentences each containing a participle governing a noun, and four containing a participle qualifying a noun and modified by an adverb

EXERCISE XLIX

Parse the following sentences —

The sports of children satisfy the child He has now recovered Truly the light is sweet He writes a good hand Nimrod founded Babylon Cæsar sent this message to the Senate "I came, I saw, I conquered" I have caught a hare He has gone home Yesterday we dined at two o'clock, and took tea at sunset Fools make a mock of sin I shall have completed it before it is required The road ought to have been finished ten years ago The work could not be done yesterday Juvenal says, "The tongue is the worst part of a bad servant" Virgil says, "Labour conquers all things"

Correct the following errors —

The ship has arrived last week I am speaking a long time Yesterday I have been to the Museum I had come to see you on Monday This book has been printed in 1893 I have seen him an hour ago I am suffering from fever the last three days I have finished the work this morning He is ill of fever since Monday The teacher had given me leave I have studied grammar last year He has forsook all his wicked companions I begun to do it He has wore out his life in the King's service The ancients asserted that virtue was its own reward The doctor affirmed that fever always produced thirst Cicero maintained that whatever was useful was good I have written my exercise before Rama called for me He has went to Bombay Since you left, I was wholly engaged in business I am not of opinion that such rules can be of much use unless persons saw them exemplified He is Governor of the Province from three years ago to the present time I do not know whether he arrives this morning or last night There have been several great wars in Europe during last century

Use of ' Shall ' and ' Will '

313 Rule XXXII—*Shall with the first person, and will with the second and the third, simply foretell, will with the first person and shall with the second and the third, express the will of the speaker*

Shall originally means *owe*. From the notion of debt arises that of *obligation*, what one *ought* to do. **Will** means *wish*, what a person is *willing* to do. **Shall** retains its primary meaning in the second and third persons singular and plural as, *Thou shalt* not kill, *he shall* surely die. Besides commanding and threatening, it also *promises*, as, *He shall* be blessed.

314 **Shall** in the first person singular and plural, simply states that something will happen, as, *I shall* go home. It does not denote any *wish* on the part of the speaker. On the other hand, **will** in the first person implies that the action is dependent upon the will of the speaker. *I will* go home, denotes that it is my own wish to go.

Will in the second and third persons usually means simple futurity, without any reference to the wish of the agent. *He will* be punished, simply states what will happen.

The different use of *shall* and *will* is partly required by politeness. In speaking of ourselves, we avoid the appearance of making our own wish the reason why anything will happen, and therefore use *shall*. In speaking to, or of, others, we use *will*, to show that they are not forced to act

I shall	We shall	}	express <i>simple futurity</i>
Thou wilt	You will		
He will	They will		
I will	We will	}	express futurity, with the additional idea of <i>promise, obligation, command, or threat</i>
Thou shalt	You shall		
He shall	They shall		

The following Rhyming Rule has been given —

In the first person, simply, *SHALL* foretells,
 In *WILL*, a *threat* or else a *promise* dwells
SHALL in the second and the third doth *threat*,
WILL simply then *foretells* the future feat

// Sp

If a man falling into the water were to cry out, "I *will* be drowned and nobody *shall* help me," his words would imply that he wished to be drowned, and refused any help. "I *shall* be drowned, and nobody *will* help me," means, I shall be drowned because no one is willing to help me.

In conditional sentences, *will* is used in conditional clauses, and *will* and *shall*, with different meanings, in the other clauses, as, If you *will* seek, you *will* find, If you *will* seek, you *shall* find. The latter expression is stronger than the former.

315 In asking questions, *shall* with the first and second persons and *will* with the third denote mere futurity, *shall* with the first and the third person, and *will* with the second generally denote the wish of the person addressed.

Shall I ?	Shall we ?	}	denote <i>simple futurity</i>
Shall you ?	Shall you ?		
Will he ?	Will they ?		
Shall I ?	Shall we ?	}	denote generally the <i>wish</i> of the person addressed
Wilt thou ?	Will you ?		
Shall he ?	Shall they ?		

Shall I go ? means, *Ought* I to go ? *Will* I go ? means, Am I *willing* to go ? This is improper, for no one can answer the question but the speaker himself. *Shall* you go ? implies *simple futurity*. *Will* you go ? means, Do you *wish* to go ? *Shall* he go ? means, Do you wish him to go ?

316 *Should and would follow the rules of shall and will, but the root-idea (owe, ought) of the verb shall is more prominent in should than in shall* The following examples should be carefully studied

You should go —It is your *duty*, you *ought* to, but you yourself must determine whether you will or not

You shall go —It is *my determination* that you shall, but whether it is your duty or not is another matter not implied at all

I shall go —It *will so happen*, it may or may not be my duty

I should go (He should go, We should go, You should go, They should go) —It is my (his, or, your, their) *duty* to go

I (He, we, you they) should have gone —It was my (his, our, your, their) *duty* to go, but I (he, we, you they) did not go

When followed by a conditional clause, however, this sense of *ought* disappears *I should have gone if I had remembered* does not imply duty at all, but simply consequence I did not go because I did not remember

EXERCISE L

Give the force of Shall and Will in the following sentences —

I shall go to Calcutta We will die with him His grief will not let him sleep They shall not have it They will hear of nothing but money He that will be cheated to the last delusion shall bind him fast If you will pay me ten rupees, you shall have the book You shall not go there you shall go to prison I will leave to-morrow If he were to make the offer, I would accept it If he were to bid you, you should obey Will you tell me? Shall you do it? You shall be king How shall I go? Will you stay here with us? I shall not go alone

Correct the following errors, giving the reason in each case —

I will not be able to accompany you Will I write to him? I will be obliged to dismiss him We would be right in refusing to obey such an order Until I will die I shall never desert you If he do not come I will be uncertain what to do I hope I will succeed Will I be allowed to go? Would we hear a good lecture if we would go? I trust that you would help me, for if not I do not know what I would do

Write three affirmative sentences, each with will in the first person, and three interrogative sentences, each with shall in the first person

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

317 Rule XXXIII — *The Subjunctive Mood is used chiefly in suppositions or to express doubt, wish, or intention, and after such conjunctions as if, unless, although, &c., as, I shall not go if it rain, I wish he were here, The sentence is that you be fined, Should it rain, I shall not come.*

The Subjunctive Mood, being a *subjoined mood* is always dependent on some antecedent clause called the *conditional clause*. The clause which contains the consequence of the supposition is called the *consequent clause*. 'If it rain' (conditional clause), 'I shall not go' (consequent clause).

The conjunctions mentioned above are not necessarily followed by the subjunctive. Some of them are often used with the indicative as, if two and two make four. Here there is no uncertainty, and the indicative is used.

"If it be," implies "I am uncertain." "If it is," implies "as I know it is." "If it were," implies "as I know it is not." "If I could I would," implies "I cannot." "If I can, I will," implies "I do not know whether I shall be able to or not."

"If the earth were flat men could not sail round it," implies that we know it is *not* flat. "If the earth is round men can sail round it," implies that we believe it to be round.

The conjunction is sometimes omitted, and the conditional verb placed before its subject as, *If I* (=if I were) Govind, I should refuse.

"The present tendency of the English language," says Adams, "is to reject the distinction of the *Subjunctive Mood*."

EXERCISE LI

Parse the following sentences —

If he were here, I would tell him. If he should try he would succeed. If thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out. Unless he pay, he will be put in prison. If I am asked whether there is any danger, I say yes. If you meet Govind, bid him make haste. Had this been true, nothing could excuse me. Love not sleep, lest thou come to want. Steal not, though thy state be mean. If thou preserve my life it shall be devoted to thy service. If it rain to-morrow, I shall not go. If he were here I should be glad. Though He say me, yet will I trust in Him. If thy brother offend thee, rebuke him, and if he repent, forgive him.

Make five sentences with verbs in the Subjunctive Mood

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

318 Rule XXXIV — *The tense of the verb in a dependent sentence must correspond to the tense of the verb in the principal sentence*

When two sentences are joined together by a subordinate conjunction or relative pronoun, one of them is called the **Principal** and the other the **Dependent** sentence. The latter is that to which the conjunction or pronoun is prefixed. "I was asked (Principal) what you said" (Dependent)

319 When the verb in the principal sentence is in the *present* or *future* tense, the verb in the dependent clause may be in *any tense* according to the sense

He says or He will say	{	That he <i>is</i> sorry
		That he <i>was</i> sorry
		That he <i>has been</i> sorry
		That he <i>had been</i> sorry
		That he <i>will be</i> sorry
		That he <i>will have been</i> sorry, &c

320 A past tense in the principal sentence ordinarily requires a past tense in the dependent clause

He said or He had said	{	That he <i>was</i> sorry
		That he <i>had been</i> sorry
		That he <i>should be</i> sorry
		That he <i>should have been</i> sorry

321 A past tense in the principal sentence is followed by a present tense in the subordinate clause (1) if the latter is a proposition *true for all time*, as, He *did* not know that the sun *is* larger than the earth, or (2) if it is a fact, known, or believed, to be true *up to the present time*. The use of the present tense in the subordinate clause intimates that it is known or believed still to be true

Compare the following sentences —

I *was* glad to hear you *are* industrious, I hope you will continue so

I *was* glad to hear you *were* industrious, I trust you are still so

I *was* glad to hear you *were* industrious, why did you cease to be so?

In the second and third of these sentences the present tense could not be used in the subordinate clause

EXERCISE LII

Parse the following sentences —

I thought he would fail. I ordered him to desist. He could pay if he chose. He might have gone, if he had thought fit. I said that I would have gone, if I had been able. If thou hadst given, I had been happy. I should have liked to go with him. He may either go or stay as he likes. I do not think that he will come. I did not think that he would come. I should not be afraid if I were not guilty. If we try it at once, we shall succeed. If we tried it at once we should succeed. It was necessary that he should find some one. I shall stay if I can. I should have stayed if I had found it desirable.

Correct the following sentences where necessary —

I have finished my letter before my brother arrived. It is a long time since we had met. He said that he will not grant my request. I hoped he will pass. I am a candidate in the hope that I might succeed. I request that you would kindly raise my salary. I write a letter that I might have an answer. I warned him that if he did so he will incur blame. I told him that it is vain to persist in the undertaking. He was so changed that I would not have known him if he did not tell me his name. If you look at the map of India, you would find the island.

Govind said that oil was lighter than water. If I should ask whether ice and water were two distinct species of things. Sencer said that to be ignorant of wickedness was a blessing. Treitus said that those things which were unseemly were unsafe. I wished to have submitted my manuscript to him. The girl said, if her master would but have let her had money, she might have been well long ago. It is while men slept that the arch enemy has always sown his tares.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT NARRATION

322 Rule XXXV—*In reporting directly the speech of another, give the exact words, marking them by inverted commas, as, Govind said, "I will go."*

When the verb in one sentence relates what is said by some speaker in another sentence, the verb in the first sentence is called the **Reporting Verb**, and the second sentence is called the **Reported Speech**.

The reported speech may give the *actual words* used by the speaker. This is called **Direct Narration**, and is the form generally used in the languages of India. When only the substance of what was said is given, this is called **Indirect Narration**. In this case no quotation marks are used.

In *Direct Narration* the words used must be introduced by some such verb as *say, remark, &c*

323 Rule XXXVI — *In reporting indirectly the speech of another, change the words into a form fit to be used by a different person, but be careful that the meaning is not altered*

In Indirect Narration the conjunction "that" is generally inserted after the reporting verb *I say*, "*I will do it*," becomes *I say that I will do it*

There is an exception in the case of reported interrogations

324 *The tense of the reporting verb is never changed*
If the reporting verb is in the present or future, the verb in the reported speech also remains unchanged

Direct Govind says (or will say) "*I am right* "

Indirect Govind says (or will say) that he *is* right

Direct Govind says (or will say) "*I was wrong* "

Indirect Govind says (or will say) that he *was* wrong

325 If the reporting verb is in the past tense, the verb in the reported speech must also be in the past tense

Direct Govind said, "*I am right* "

Indirect Govind said that he *was* right

326 If the direct speech contains a past indefinite tense or a past imperfect tense, in the indirect speech they must generally be changed to the past perfect and the past perfect continuous, respectively

He said, "I saw him running away," becomes *He said (that) he had seen him running away* So *He said, "I was reading when she called me,"* becomes *He said (that) he had been reading when she called him*

When the reported speech contains a statement of a universal truth the tense of the verb must not be changed *He said, "Honesty is the best policy,"* becomes *He said that honesty is the best policy*

327 Pronouns of the *first* person in the *direct* speech are put into the same person as the subject of the introductory verb, as,

Direct Krishna said, "*I am sick* "

Indirect Krishna said that he *was* sick

Direct I said, "*I will go* "

Indirect I said that I *would* go

328 Pronouns of the *second* person in the *direct* speech are put into the same person as the pronoun which comes after the introductory verb, as,

Direct Ramā said to *me*, "You are wrong"

Indirect Ramā told me that I was wrong

Direct Ramā said to *him*, "You are wrong"

Indirect Ramā told him that *he* was wrong

Direct Ramā said to *her*, "You are wrong"

Indirect Ramā told her that *she* was wrong

329 Pronouns of the *third* person in the *direct* speech remain the same in the *indirect* speech, as,

Direct Ramā said to me, "*He* is wrong"

Indirect Ramā told me that *he* was wrong

In the *Indirect* form *he* may refer either to Rāma or to the person spoken of. To avoid this doubt, the name or designation of the person referred to must be inserted. The sentence should be "he (Rāma)" or "he (the speaker)"

No change of person is required when the speech is reported to the person to whom it was first addressed, as,

Direct Govind said to you, "*You* are right"

Indirect Govind told you that *you* were right

330 Observe that in all the above examples the verb *said* in the *direct* becomes *told* in the *indirect*. *Said* may, however, be used in the indirect narration. In "Rama said to me that I was wrong," *said* is quite correct. If *told* be used then the preposition *to* must be omitted. "He said me," and "He told to me" are both wrong. *Told* cannot be used as the reporting verb in direct narration.

EXERCISE LIII

Turn the following sentences into the indirect form —

I said to him, "The weather is stormy." I said to him, "The journey will be long." The master said to the boys, "A prize will be given to the most diligent." Pilate said, "What I have written, I have written." My brother said, "I have been very ill." His sister exclaimed, "My book has been lost." You said, "I am going." You said to me, "You and he are going." You said to him, "You are going." You say, "I

am going " You say to me, " You are going " The chairman said " My authority was publicly questioned " He replied, " I cannot admit that " He said to me, " I found your book " You say, " I will come " We say, " He will come " I said to him, " I helped you several times " We said yesterday, " We will come " I said to him, " I have much pleasure in granting your request " I said to her, " All your faults will be pardoned if you confess them " The Bible says, " The way of transgressors is hard "

Turn into the direct form —

Govind said that he had read that book. The master told you that you might go. He asked what he could do to help me. The merchant said that you had ordered all these articles. John asked James to let him know what had passed. The magistrate said that he was sorry to be obliged to take such measures. He enquired what he had done the previous day. He told the peon that he had been robbed by his servant.

331 In Questions the introductory verbs in the direct speech should be replaced in the indirect by some verb expressing interrogation and a conjunctive adverb, when necessary, as,

Direct Govind said to me, " What do you want ? "

Indirect Govind asked me what I wanted

Direct Ram said to Govind, " Is this sum right ? "

Indirect Ram asked Govind { *if* the sum was right
 whether the sum was right

From this it will be seen that when the verb *ask* introduces a question which requires *yes* or *no* for an answer, it must be followed, not by *that* but by *if* or *whether*. In other cases no conjunction follows it.

332 Rule XXXVII — *When a verb in the Imperative Mood has to be changed into the indirect narration, consider whether it expresses a command or an entreaty or simply a friendly address, and substitute for the reporting verb one which conveys the idea expressed by the imperative*

Direct The master said to his servant, " Do the work ".

Indirect The master ordered (commanded or told) his servant to do the work.

Direct The beggar said to the gentleman, " Help me to get some employment ".

Indirect The beggar entreated (or prayed or begged) the gentleman to help him to get some employment.

Direct My friend *said* to me, "Consider my work and say what you think of it"

Indirect My friend *asked* me to *consider* his work and say what I thought of it

Direct He *said* to him, "Stop a moment!"

Indirect He *asked* him to stop a moment

333 A question and a command are often combined in one speech

Direct He *said* to him very angrily, "Why have you come? Have I not told you never to see my face again? Leave the room!"

Indirect He *asked* him very angrily why he had come, and whether he had not told him never to see his face again, and he ordered him to leave the room

334 The reporting verb may need to be similarly changed in a few other instances

Direct Turning to his friend he *said*, "And thou, too, farewell"

Indirect Turning to his friend he *bade* him, too, farewell

Direct I *said* to him, "Here, take your book!"

Indirect I *called* to him to take his book

Direct He *said*, "Alas, how foolish I have been!"

Indirect He *exclaimed* with sorrow that he had been very foolish, or, He *acknowledged* with sorrow how foolish he had been

Direct He *said* to him, "Please lend me that book a moment"

Indirect He *asked* him kindly to lend him that book a moment

Direct He *said*, "Let us divide the booty amongst ourselves"

Indirect He *proposed* that they should divide the booty amongst themselves

Direct He *said* to me, "I thank you for all you have done"

Indirect He *told* me that he thanked me for all I had done, or more idiomatically, He *thanked* me for all I had done

Direct He *said* to me, "Would you like to go?" I *said* "Certainly"

Indirect He *asked* me if I should like to go I *said* I certainly should

335 *Interjectives*, *Vocatives*, &c, that can only be used in addressing one directly, are left out in Indirect speech

Direct He *said*, "Ha, my fine fellow! I will have you hanged"

Indefinite He *called* him a fine fellow, and *said* (tho it) he would have him hanged

EXERCISE LIV

Turn the following into the Indirect form —

He said to him, "Where are you going?" He said to me, "Which is the book you like best?" He said to her, "Do you know all the subjects for the examinations?" I said to him at once, "Who told you that?" I said to him, "Why did you put yourself in danger?" The king said to his attendants, "Bring to me all the traitors you captured and put them to death before they have time to escape." He said, "How unlucky we all appear to be!" He said, "Let us each try to help the man a little." The beggar said to the lady, "Pity the sorrows of a poor old man whose trembling limbs have borne him to your door!" The beggar took the money from her saying, "May God reward you!" I said to them, "Let us do nothing till we have heard the king's reply." I said to him, "Thank you, I shall not need any more help." The governor said to them in reply, "Thank you for all the information you have given me. I quite expected you would address me on this subject, and I will bear the matter in mind."

336 Words indicating nearness of time or place in relation to the speaker must generally be changed when another person reports the speech

Thus *now* becomes *then*, *this* becomes *that*, *here* becomes *there*, *ago* becomes *before*, *thus* becomes *in that way*

Direct I said to him, "Do it *now*."

Indirect I told him to do it *then*.

Direct He said to me, "I finished the work long *ago*."

Indirect He told me that he had finished the work long *before*.

Similarly change *to day* into *that day*, *to-morrow* into *the next day*, *yesterday* into *the day before* (or *the previous day*), *last night* into *the night before* (or *the previous night*), &c, &c

337 But whenever the words of the speaker are reported at the same time or place at which they were spoken, the above words are not changed

Direct Rama said to me, "I will come to day."

Indirect Rama told me he would come to day (*if quoted the same day*), or, Rama told me he would come that day (*if quoted any other day*)

Similarly *come* must sometimes be changed into *go*

Direct He said to me, "Come here."

Indirect He told me to come here, or He told me to go there, according to the position of the speaker

EXERCISE LV

Turn the following into the indirect form —

He said to me, "Why are you troubling me now? Go home. I will see you this evening." He said to us, "I am sorry that I failed to see you yesterday, but I shall undoubtedly be at leisure to-morrow." He said to them, "Do it thus: if you fail the first time, try again, you will certainly succeed at last." He said to me, "Thank you for all your help. I should not have finished the work till to-morrow unless you had been here." They replied, "Go to the master now, we shall certainly tell you nothing until you have seen him." My father said, "Have you finished your lesson yet, my boy?" "No," I replied, "this lesson is very difficult. I was trying to do it yesterday, but did not succeed." "Never mind," said my father, "you will be all the better for trying even if you do not succeed."

Correct the following sentences —

The teacher told you sit down. The master told that I will let the boys go home. I told him to ask his master can I see. I said him to come with me. He said me go. He told that I will come. I heard him to ask her that why you not run away? I told her that she do not open the door. I said that why you were not diligent? Govind said that we are to stay here.

Turn the following into the direct form —

He said that his mother was just then absent from home, but that I should not on that account defer my visit, as she would without doubt return in a few days.

The young officer said that he was as old as the prime minister of England, and thought himself as capable of commanding a ship as that minister was of governing the State.

He asked me when I intended to leave Calcutta. I told him as that was the day of examination, I could not leave then, but hoped to do so next day.

338 Rule XXXVIII —*In Negative Sentences the negative not is placed between the auxiliary and the principal verb, as, I do not like him.*

The above is the usual form. In some cases, especially in poetry, the auxiliary do is not used, and the negative is placed after the verb, as, he spoke *not* a word.

In imperative sentences, with the verb *to be* the negative is placed between the verb and its complement, as he is *not* here.

The negative precedes the infinitive, as, I told him *not* to be afraid.

339 The negative and interrogative forms are combined by placing the nominative and *not* after the auxiliary, as, *Do we not love?* When there is no auxiliary, they are placed after the verb, as, *Love we not?*

If the answer given is *yes*, the verb following must be the *affirmative*

If the answer given is *no*, the verb following must be the *negative*

340 By the insertion or omission of the negative the asker of a question intimates his own *belief* on the matter asked about, and the answer which he therefore *expects* to receive

Has he always been here in good time?

Has he not always been here in good time?

The second form would be used if the speaker believed *he had* and expected the answer, *Yes*. The first if he believed *he had not* and expected the answer, *No*, or if he was wholly *in doubt*

Has he not gone? (I think he must have)

Has he gone? (I hoped he would stay all day)

Are you not late? (My clock says you are)

Are you late? (My clock says you are in good time)

Is my meaning not clear? (It seems clear enough to me)

Is my meaning clear? (I rather fear you do not find it so)

EXERCISE LVI

Parse the following sentences —

Am I not doing my best? I have not seen him. I do not know the man.
Is he not coming to-morrow? Why he not go with us? I was not going to tell him. Had I not seen it, I should not have believed it.
Shall you not be writing? No, I shall not.

Correct the following sentences —

Why you not write to me? Did you not tell him? (*Ans*) Yes, I did not. Did he not meet you yesterday? (*Ans*) No, he did meet me. Why you not go away? Why they will not come? Can the boy not read? (*Ans*) Yes, he cannot.

Turn the following sentences into the negative form —

I am hopeful. They are going home. He sent the horse yesterday.
The king is jealous of his prime minister. This is well written. I had intended to go. He was killed in the battle. My brother wrote that.
Do you understand the question? Have you money?

THE ADVERB

341 Rule XXXIX — Adverbs *qualify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs*, as, *He acts nobly*, *This is very large*, *He ran too quickly*

A phrase or clause has often the force of an adverb, as, *I left him in the garden*, *We gained ground step by step*, *When I came he told me*. Such expressions are called **Adverbial Phrases or Clauses**, because they modify the verbs to which they are attached.

Such phrases or clauses may themselves be modified by another adverb, which is sometimes, though incorrectly, taken as modifying the preposition or conjunction. *He walked across India*. *He walked right across India*. *His house is on the top of the hill*. *His house is exactly on the top of the hill*. *I will come when you send for me*. *I will come only when you send for me*. In such cases the meaning modified by the adverb is contained in the *entire adverbial phrase or clause*, and not in the preposition or conjunction alone.

342 Some common words are either adjectives or adverbs. In old English the adverb was often formed from the adjective by adding *e*, as, *soft*, *softe*. The *e* was dropped, and then both had the same form. *Loud*, *hard*, *fast*, *long*, *high*, *wide*, *much*, *little*, &c., are both adverbs and adjectives. The manner in which they are used determines to which part of speech they belong.

Adjectives should not be used as adverbs, nor adverbs as adjectives, as, *Sweet sung*, for *Sweetly sung*, *He spoke very mean of him*, for, *He spoke very meanly of him*.

In the case of intransitive verbs of incomplete predication the complement is sometimes taken for an adverb, and written so. "*The rose smells sweetly*," is an error. It should be, "*The rose smells sweet*." *Sweet* being a subjective complement qualifies the subject, *rose*.

With transitive verbs adverbs should be used, as, *I received him warmly*. In the following examples the meaning differs according to the part of speech used.

I found the road easy, i. e., not difficult to walk on.

I found the road easy, i. e., found it without difficulty.

343 Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative (often a weak one), as, *It is not unjust*, *He is by no means unhappy*.

344 Some adverbs are followed by corresponding adverbs, as, Here—there where—there, when—then, never—nor, rather—than, not only—but also, &c

Here we are suffering from drought, there water is abundant When the Government is strong, then are the people safe I will never yield the point, nor even discuss it He would rather die than betray his trust He is King, not only in name, but also in power

EXERCISE LVII

Parse the following sentences —

The inhabitants fought very bravely, but their enemies were so greatly superior in numbers, that they were speedily compelled to retreat This exercise is neatly and correctly written The force of instinct is very strongly shown by the mode in which many birds build their nests There cannot be anything more insignificant than vanity

Correct the following sentences —

The garden is ill laid out, but the situation is remarkable good If the letter is not bad written, send it He speaks very beautiful Newton lived in a manner agreeably to the dictates of piety No man could have acted nobler I am wonderful delighted with it Suitably to his condition was the behaviour he always exhibited The river flows rapid The youth has been careful brought up He acts very sensible on most occasions, but he behaved most meritorious on the last

POSITION OF THE ADVERB

345 Rule XL —Adverbs are generally placed close to the words which they qualify, as, *Very* good, He acted *wisely*

346 Adverbs are usually placed —

(1) Before adjectives or other adverbs, as, *too* hot, *very* badly written

(2) After intransitive verbs, as, I laughed *heartily*

(3) Usually after the object of a transitive verb, as, He paid them *liberally*

(4) Between the principal verb and the auxiliary or between two auxiliaries, as, He has readily consented, It has often been my lot

Sometimes the adverb is placed before the verb, as, he willingly granted their request

The adverb should not separate the verb and its object He *told his tale pleasingly*, not, He *told pleasantly his tale*

When an adverb qualifies a whole sentence or is used emphatically, it is generally placed first, as, *Unfortunately, he had excited the Queen's displeasure, Never was a man so used*

347 The adverbs *always, never, often, sometimes*, are usually placed before the verbs they qualify, except the verb *to be*, as, *He always uses the purest style, He often talks foolishly, He is never at home* *Enough* follows the word it qualifies, as, good *enough*

348 Without great care in placing the adverb properly a wrong meaning may be given to a sentence, or it may be rendered ambiguous *Only, merely, solely, chiefly*, and a few others require special attention They are *generally* placed immediately *before* the word they qualify

In the sentence "He *only* lived for their sakes," the meaning is that he did not do anything else for their sakes "He lived *only* for their sakes," means that he lived for this one reason "He lived for their sakes *only*," means that he lived for nobody else's sake *Only* at the end of a sentence often has a disparaging signification "He gave a rupee *only*," implies that more might have been expected

EXERCISE LVIII

Correct the following sentences —

The master taught very well the boy He renounced for ever his country They intended to carry farther their operations Melville proposed to invite back the king Nelson attacked most courageously the enemy's fleet

I am only left England has only possessions in South Africa Italy has every gift of God, not freedom only He is cautious not to give offence properly He is seldom or ever in his place It is not my intention to compel, but to advise you He only regards not his health, but his reputation I will not go be he never so pressing

Give the different meanings of the following sentences —

Only he promised a book He only promised a book He promised only a book He only lived for their sakes He lived only for their sakes He lived for their sakes only

THE PREPOSITION

349 Rule XLI —Prepositions govern the Objective Case, as, He went *from* Madras *to* Calcutta

The object of a preposition is therefore either a noun or some word or words that take the place of a noun, as a noun clause, &c. In many cases, however, a preposition appears to govern an adverb, as in the common phrases, *for ever*, *at once*, *before now*, &c. Such expressions have a single and definite meaning, and are really compound adverbs.

350 Prepositions generally stand before the words they govern, but whether before or after, they should always be placed as near to them as possible.

In interrogative and relative sentences in familiar style, the preposition is often placed at the end, as, What could it proceed *from*? This is the person whom I gave it *to*.

The preposition is most frequently placed at the end when the relative is omitted, as, It was a thing I was used *to* (*to which* I was used). It must also be placed at the end when *that* is used for *whom*, as, The person *that* I gave it *to*. The objective is sometimes placed first for emphasis, as, *Such conduct* I am at a loss to account *for*.

351 Prepositions sometimes form compounds with verbs, as, *to smile at*, *to pick up*, &c. Such expressions should be parsed as *Prepositional Verbs*.

352 The prepositions *for*, *from*, *in*, *on*, are often omitted before nouns of place or time, as, I will cause it to rain (*for*) forty days.

Prepositions should not be inserted where they are not wanted. The word *to* is often omitted in English where it would be used in the Indian vernaculars. He told *to* me, ought to be, He told me.

Prepositions should not be omitted where Syntax requires them. I came to speak you, ought to be, I came to speak *to* you. I can depend your promise, ought to be, I can depend *upon* your promise.

353 When two prepositions are used with the same noun, the noun is usually placed after the first, and the pronoun representing it after the second, as, He walked up the hill and round it, *not*, He walked up the hill and round the hill, *nor yet*, up and round the hill. But *up and*

down the hill would be correct if we meant up and down several times

354 In is used before the names of countries, districts, and large cities, at, before the names of small towns and villages, as, He is *in* England, *in* Calcutta, He lives *at* Serampore *in* Bengal

355 To usually denotes *motion towards*, as, He went *to* Calcutta In the sentence, Ceylon lies *to* the south of India, *to* denotes that Ceylon is *beyond* India Travancore is *to* the south of India, should be, *in* the south of India

356 With often denotes the *instrument*, and by the *doer*, as, This was written *by* me *with* a quill

357 Since, as a preposition, signifies *from* It is placed before a noun or phrase denoting some *point* of time, never before a noun or phrase denoting a *period* of time It is also preceded by a verb in the *present perfect* tense, as, The school has been closed *since* May I am unwell *since* three weeks, should read, I *have been* unwell *for* three weeks But *since* is correctly used when we speak of an interval between a past fixed point of time and the present time, as, I have been unwell *since* Friday

358 At, like *since*, denotes a *point of time*, in, a *portion of time*, as, He left *at* six o'clock, He will come *in* the evening *In* an hour, means at the end of an hour, *within* an hour, before the end of an hour

359 For (in the sense of *during*) denotes a *portion of time* It may be used with any tense except the present imperfect I am studying English *since* two years, ought to be, I have been studying English *for* two years

360 From, denoting a *point of time*, may be used with *all* the tenses, but must be followed by *to*, *till*, or *until*, as, I attended *from* the 1st *to* the 20th of this month

EXERCISE LIX

Parse the following sentences —

To whom did you give the letter which I sent? Paper did not come into use until the fifteenth century. Temperance, by fortifying the mind and body, leads to happiness. If we view ourselves, with all our imperfections and failings, in a just light, we shall rather be surprised at our enjoying so many good things, than discontented because there are any which we want. Be not overcome because he injures you meet with, so as to pursue revenge, because the disasters of life so as to sink into despair, by the evil examples of the world, so as to follow them into sin. Overcome injuries by forgiveness, disasters, by fortitude. evil examples, by firmness of principle. As you say so, I shall go. Unless you try, you will not succeed. He is industrious, and consequently he is successful. Always try to speak distinctly. I may be away, but I cannot tell yet.

Correct the following sentences —

She I am pleased with, but not with he. Except thou, I have none to help me. He laid the blame on some one, I know not who of the party. They gladly of themselves made up the ransom. Between you and I there is much mischief in it.

Is it me you mean to compare him with? The Turks were the next people who the Russians made war against. You surely know not who you speak to. He is wholly unacquainted with, and consequently incapable of explaining, the principles of the Art. One of the conspirators wrote to, and informed the Emperor of, the daring scheme.

Give me a little of salt. I failed in last December. My father regretted for my leaving. I will go on to-morrow. Listen what I tell you. There is no use of talking. He refused to alter from his decision. My brother went Bombay. I saw him in this week. Send to me some money. He showed favour upon me. This horse is worth forty rupees.

He went to Madras. He was kicked with his horse. They spent six months at Bengal. He lives at London. I have not seen him from a long time. Come after a week. I cut it by a knife. Is Ceylon in the south or west of India? I am a candidate from four months. It rained a morning time. Friday evening he will leave for Bombay. I send you this letter with Govind. The whole island was overrun with the invaders. It is after a long time that you have come to school.

The speech did not afford no information. It is not no uncommon thing. He affirmed that he would not on no account grant the request. I have not done nothing that should bring blame upon me. I cannot remember nothing about it. Nothing never affects me like that.

We must not expect to find study agreeable always. The field having been tilled often, will yield a good crop. Men's views are strangely altered by skillful hints some times.

Rama very slow likes. The following sentence cannot but be possibly understood. I hope not much to tire those whom I shall not happen to please. They proposed to share equally the fruit. These opinions have been held generally in every age.

361 Rule XLII — *Certain words and phrases must be followed by particular prepositions*

Although other prepositions may, in other connections, express precisely the same meaning, they may, according to the idiom of the language be quite inadmissible after a particular word

362 Some words are followed by different prepositions to express different meanings The following are some of the principal examples —

Abhorrence <i>of</i> deceit	Adorn <i>with</i> flowers
Abhorrent <i>to</i> the feelings	Advantage <i>of</i> his absence
✓ Abide <i>by</i> a statement ✓	„ <i>over</i> his opponent
✓ Abound <i>in</i> or <i>with</i> living things ✓	Adverse <i>to</i> the proposal
„ <i>in</i> expedient	Affection <i>for</i> a person or thing
✓ Absent <i>from</i> school ✓	Affinity <i>with</i> a person or thing
Absolve <i>from</i> a promise	„ <i>between</i> two
Absorbed <i>in</i> thought	Afflicted <i>with</i> blindness
Abstain <i>from</i> food	Afraid <i>of</i> punishment
Accede <i>to</i> a request	Agree <i>among</i> themselves
Accept <i>of</i> a favour	„ <i>to</i> a proposal
Acceptable <i>to</i> a person	„ <i>with</i> a person
Access <i>to</i> a house	Agreeable <i>to</i> one's wishes
Accompanied <i>by</i> a friend	Agreement <i>between</i> them
„ <i>in</i> an expedition	Aim <i>at</i> a thing
In accord <i>with</i> a person or thing	Akin <i>to</i> pity
✓ To accord <i>to</i> a person	Alarmed <i>at</i> the sight
Accordance <i>with</i> the rules	Alien <i>to</i> the subject
According <i>to</i> promise	Alienate <i>from</i> a friend
Accountable <i>to</i> his master <i>for</i> the money	Alight <i>from</i> a horse
Accuse <i>of</i> a crime	„ <i>on</i> the ground
Accused <i>by</i> a person	„ <i>at</i> the door
Accustomed <i>to</i> teaching	Alive <i>to</i> the risk
Acquaint <i>with</i> a person or thing	Alliance <i>with</i> a party
Acquiesce <i>in</i> a decision	Allied <i>to</i> a thing
Acquit <i>of</i> blame	„ <i>with</i> a person
Adapted <i>to</i> a thing	Allotted <i>to</i> each
„ <i>for</i> a purpose	Allowable <i>for</i> a person
Addicted <i>to</i> opium	Allude <i>to</i> his conduct
Adequate <i>to</i> a want	Alternate <i>with</i> something else
Adhere <i>to</i> a purpose	Amazed <i>at</i> a proposal
Adjacent <i>to</i> the city	Ambitious <i>of</i> glory
Admiration <i>of</i> a person	Amount <i>to</i> a hundred
Admit <i>of</i> excuse	Angry <i>at</i> a thing
Admonished <i>of</i> a fault	„ <i>with</i> a person
„ <i>by</i> a person	Annoyed <i>at</i> a thing
	„ <i>with</i> a person

- Answer *of* a person
 " *to* your name
 " *for* his neglect
 Antidote *against* poison
 Antipathy *to* a thing
 Anxiety *about* a thing
 " *for* his safety
 Apart *from* anything
 Appeal *to* the High Court
 " *against* the decision
 Apply *to* a person *for* a thing
 Appoint *to* a situation
 Apprehensive *of* danger
 Apprise *of* his loss
 Appropriate *to* the occasion
 Approve *of* his conduct
 Arrive *at* a place, *in* a carriage
 Ascribe *to* him the honour
 Ashamed *of* his conduct
 Ask *for* a thing
 , *of* a person
 Assent *to* a proposal
 Associate *with* a person
 Assure him *of* safety
 Astonished *at* his impudence
 Atone *to* a person
 " *for* a fault
 Attend *to* (listen) *upon* (what)
 Attendance *at* court
 " *upon* a person
 Attentive *to* a teacher
 Avail oneself *of* the chance
 Advise *to* a thing
 Avert danger *from* a person
 Aware *of* his intention
 Backward *in* learning
 Banish *from* the country
 Bare *of* clothes
 Bathe *in* water
 Bear *with* a person
 Beg *of* a person
 " *for* bread
 Believe *in* his truthfulness
 Belong *to* a person
 Bent *on* going
 Bereaved *of* his wife
 Beset *with* danger
 Bestow a thing *upon* a person
 Betray *to* the enemy
 " *into* his hands
 Beware *of* the dog
 Blame *for* failure
 Blind *to* his danger
 " *of* an eye
 Blush *at* the sight
 " *for* his conduct
 Boast *of* skill
 Borrow *of* or *from* a friend
 Bound *in* honour
 " *by* every tie
 Buy a thing *of* a person
 Call *upon* or *on* a person
 " *at* the office
 , *for* the price
 Capable *of* an action
 Capricious *for* thought
 Care *for* his life
 Care *of* your books
 Careless *of* or *about* the result
 Carp *at* the answer
 Catch *at* a snaw
 Caution *against* a thing
 Cautious *of* fire
 Civil *at* his speech
 Cede *to* Germany
 Celebrated *for* bravery
 Certain *of* success
 Charge him *with* crime
 Charge the cost *to* him
 Cheat a person *of* his money
 Clearse *from* sin
 Clear *of* debt
 Close (adj.) *to* the river
 Close (verb) *with* the offer
 Coincide *with* his opinion
 Combine *with* the enemy
 Commit *to* memory
 Committed *against* the law
 Common *to* old and young
 Compare a thing *with* another
 (hkeness)
 " a thing *to* another (contrast)
 Compatible *with* safety
 Compensate him *for* his work
 Compete *with* a person
 " *for* a prize
 Competent *for* the office
 Complain *of* a person or thing
 " *about* a person or thing

- Complain *to* a person, *against* a person
 Comply *with* a request
 Composed *of* metal
 Concern *from* view
 Concerned *at* or *about* an event
 " *for* his safety
 " *in* the crime
 Concur *with* a person
 " *in* an opinion
 Condemned *to* death *for* murder
 Condole *with* a person
 Conduce *to* health
 Confer *with* a person
 , *about* a thing
 " a favour *on* a person
 Confess *to* a fault
 Confide *in* a person
 " a secret *to* a person
 Confident *of* victory
 Confined *to* bed
 Confirmed *in* the appointment
 Conformable *to* rule
 Confront a person *with* his accusers
 Congenial *to* one's tastes
 Congratulate him *on* his marriage
 Connect *with* what goes before
 Connive *at* a crime
 Consent *to* the plan
 Consequent *upon* the proceeding
 Consist *of* metal
 " *in* causes or results
 Consistent *with* a statement
 Consult *with* your father
 Contend *with* or *against* a person
 " *for* or *about* a thing
 Content *with* his pay
 Contrary *to* his orders
 Conversant *with* a person
 Converse *with* a person
 " *on* a subject
 Convince *of* error
 Copy *from* a book
 Correspond *with* a person
 " *about* a subject
 " *to* an object
 Count *on* or *upon* an event
 Cure a person *of* a disease
 Deaf *to* advice
 Deal *with* a person
 " *in* rice, sugar
 Decide *on* or *upon* a plan
 Defective *in* strength
 Defer *to* his opinion
 Deficient *in* sense
 Deformed *in* body
 Deprive a person *of* his dues
 Delight *in* his company
 Delighted *with* the offer
 Demand *of* a person
 Demur *to* the charge
 Depart *from* a place
 Depend *upon* one's efforts
 Deprive a person *of* a thing
 Derived *from* Sanskrit
 Derogate *from* one's reputation
 Derogatory *to* one's good name
 Descriptive *of* the place
 Deserving *of* praise
 Designed *for* use
 Designs *of* gun
 Desist *from* the chase
 Despair *of* success
 Destitute *of* food
 Destructive *of* happiness
 Determine *upon* going
 Detract *from* his good name
 Devolve *on* or *upon* a person
 Die *of* hunger, *by* the sword
 Differ *from* a person
 " *on* a subject
 " *in* opinions
 Difference *between* things
 Difficulty *in* an attempt
 Diligent *in* business
 Diminution *of* comfort
 Disagree *with* a person
 Disagreeable *to* a person
 Disappointed *of* a thing (not received)
 " *in* a thing (received but not satisfactory)
 " *with* or *in* a person
 Disapprove *of* conduct
 Discharge *from* service
 Discourage *from* an attempt
 Discouragement *to* virtue

- Dislike *to* labour
 Dispense *with* his help
 Displeased *with* his servant
 Dispute *with* a person *about* a thing
 Dissent *from* an opinion
 Distinct *from* the other
 Distrustful *of* his courage
 Divide *between* two, *among* many
 Doubt *of* one's honesty
 Due *to* want of care
 Eager *for* a thing
 " *in* its pursuit
 Easy *of* approach
 Effective *for* war
 Elicit *from* a person
 Eligible *for* office
 Embittered *against* a person
 Emboldened *by* success
 Eminent *for* skill
 Emulous *of* fame
 Enamoured *of* a person
 Encouragement *to* virtue
 Encroach *on* or *upon* a possession
 Endured *to* a person
 Endeavour *after* a thing
 Endowed *with* beauty
 Endued *with* virtue
 Engage *in* business
 " *to* a person
 Engraved *on* brass
 Enjoin *upon* a person
 Enlarge *upon* the subject
 Enlist *in* the army
 Enter *upon* a course
 " *into* one's plans
 Entitled *to* a seat
 Enveloped *in* fog
 Envious *of* his success
 Envy (noun) *at* his success
 Equal *to* the other
 Escape *from* jail
 Essential *to* health
 Estimated *at* its proper worth
 Exact (verb) *from* a person
 Excel *in* drawing
 Except (verb) *from* payment
 Exception *to* a rule
 against a person
 Exchange horses *with* me
 Excluded *from* society
 Exclusion *of* anything
 Excuse a person *from* attendance
 Excuse *for* absence
 Exempt *from* duty
 Expel *from* school
 Expensive *in* dress
 Exposed *to* danger
 Expostulate *with* a person
 Extricate *from* a difficulty
 Exult *in* a success
 " *over* a person
 Fail *in* one's purpose
 " *of* success
 Fall *under* suspicion
 " *from* the roof
 " *into* error
 " *on* or *upon* an enemy
 " *in* love
 " *in with* a proposal
 " *among* thieves
 Familiar *with* the book
 Fatal *to* anything
 Favourable *to* his wishes
 Favoured *with* your company
 Fawn (verb) *upon* a person
 Feed *on* grass (intrans.)
 " *with* corn (trans.)
 Feel *for* the poor
 Fertile *in* resource
 Find *out* the cause
 Finish *with* a song
 Fit *for* a purpose
 Fond *of* fruit
 Foreign *to* a purpose
 Forgetful *of* his duty
 Free *from* blame
 Frown *upon* a person or thing
 Full *of* sorrow
 Gifted *with* skill
 Glad *of, at* the result
 Glance *at* an object
 " *over* a page
 Glory *in* victory
 Grasp *at* a shadow
 Grateful *to* a person
 Greedy *of, after* riches
 Grieve *at* or *for* an event
 " *for* a person
 Grumble *at* the change

- Guard *against* or *from* danger
 Guilty *of* murder
 Happen *in* a place
 " *at* a time
 " *to* a person
 Healed *of* his disease
 Hide *from* a person
 Hint *at* the cause
 Hope *for* better times
 Hurtful *to* anything
 Hush *up* the tale
 Ignorant *of* a subject
 Ill *of* fever
 Illustrative *of* the subject
 Immersed *in* pleasure
 ✓ Impatient *of* control
 " *for* payment
 " *at* delay
 Impelled *by* pride
 Impertinent *to* his teacher
 Impose *upon* a person
 Impress a thing *upon* a person
 Impute *to* a person
 Incentive *to* labour
 Inclined *to* idleness
 Included *in* the list
 Inclusive *of* all charges
 Inculcate *upon* a person
 Indebted *to* a person
 " *in* a large sum
 Independent *of* help
 Indicative *of* displeasure
 Indifferent *to* pain
 Indignant *at* the insult
 Indulgent *to* his children
 Infected *with* disease
 Infer *from* premises
 Infested *with* snakes
 Inflict punishment *on* him
 Influence *over* or *with* a person
 " *on* his conduct
 Inform a person *of* a thing
 " *against* a person
 Infringe *on* his rights
 Inure *into* crime
 Inseparable *from* one's mother
 Insinuate *into* one's favour
 Insist *upon* payment
 Intent *upon* his work
 Interfere *with* his rights
 Intimate *with* a person
 Introduce *to* a person
 Introduced *into* a thing
 Intrude *upon* a person
 " *into* your compound
 Inured *to* hardship
 Inveigh *against* crime
 Invest *with* authority
 " *in* land
 ✓ Invite *to* a marriage
 Involved *in* disgrace
 Irrelevant *to* the question
 Irrespective *of* the result
 Jealous *of* his rights
 Jest *at* danger
 Join *with* a person
 Judge *of* a person *by* his actions
 Know *of* anything
 Lame *of* a leg
 Lament *for* his only son
 Laugh *at* him *for* his folly
 Lavish *of* money
 Liable *to* abuse
 " *for* the loss
 Listen *to* a person
 " *to* or *for* a sound
 Lost *to* a sense of shame
 Made *of* wood *for* a purpose
 Marry one person *to* another
 Martyr *for* a cause, *to* a disease
 Meddle *with* the witch
 Meditate *upon* a question
 Meet *with* a refusal
 Mitigate *against* an opinion
 Mindful *of* his promise
 Mourn *for* a person
 Moved *at* the sight
 " *by* his passions
 " *to* tears
 " *with* envy
 Murmur *at* or *against* a person
 Natural *to* a boy
 Necessary *to* success
 " *for* the purpose
 Necessity *of* the case
 " *for* his going
 ✓ Need (noun) *of* or *for* a thing
 Negligent *in* attendance
 Obedient *to* his teachers
 Object (verb) *to* a demand

- ✓ Obliged *to* him *for* a gift
 Observance *of* the Sabbath
 Occur *to* a person
 Odious *to* a person
 Offend *against* a rule
 Officiate *for* another
 " *in* a post
 ✓ Open *to* objection
 ✓ Opposed *to* fact
 Overcome *with* sleep
 Overwhelmed *with* joy
 ✓ Parallel *to* the first
 ✓ Part *with* his money
 Partake *of* food
 Partial *to* his friend
 ✓ Pass *by* a spot
 " *over* a fault
 ✓ Passion *for* gambling
 Peculiar *to* the country
 Penitent *for* his conduct
 ✓ Persevere *in* study
 Persist *in* a course
 Pertain *to* a subject
 Play *at* cricket
 " *on* the harp
 ✓ Polite *in* his manners
 " *to* all
 ✓ Popular *for* his kindness
 " *with* his companions
 ✓ Possessed *of* wealth
 " *with* an idea
 Pray *for* a blessing
 Precious *to* the owner
 Preferable *to* the first
 Prefixed *to* the paper
 Prejudice *against* a person
 Prepared *for* the worst
 Prepared *against* an event
 Preparatory *to* going
 Presume *upon* his good nature
 Pretext *for* absence
 Prevent *from* coming
 ✓ Previous *to* his death
 Profit *by* the transaction
 Profitable *to* the owner
 Prohibit *from* giving
 ✓ Prone *to* deceit
 ✓ Proper *for* the occasion
 ✓ Protest *against* the course
 ✓ Proud *of* his position
- Provide *for* a person
 " *with* a thing
 " *against* a danger
 Put up *with* abuse
 Qualified *for* office
 Quarrel *with* a person
 Questioned *on* the subject
 Quick *at* accounts
 Rebel *against* the king
 Recede *from* his position
 Reckless *of* danger
 Reckon *on* a profit
 Reconciled *to* a loss
 " *with* an enemy
 Recover *from* fever
 Reduce *to* a state
 Refer *to* his letter
 Refrain *from* an action
 Regard *for* a person, *to* our
 neighbour
 Reign *over* the country
 Rejoice *at* a thing
 " *with* a person
 Relation *to* a matter
 Relations *with* a person
 Relieve *from* the task
 Relish *for* work
 Rely *on* or *upon* a promise or
 person
 Remind a person *of* a thing
 Remiss *in* duty
 Remit *to* England
 Remote *from* home
 ✓ Remove *from* the post
 Repent *of* a deed
 Repine *at* misfortune
 Replete *with* luxury
 Reply *to* a letter
 Reproach him *for* his faults
 Require *of* a person
 Rescue *from* danger
 Resigned *to* his lot
 Resolve *upon* a course
 Resort *to* trickery
 ✓ Respect (noun) *for* a person
 " *of* a matter
 Respond *to* an appeal
 Restore *to* an office
 Result (verb) *from* carelessness
 " (noun) *of* the examination

EXERCISES

Correct the following sentences —

LX—I am tired with his advice. Give an instance for a proper noun. I have a desire upon that. To which he complied. He had been applying to this post. I was made acquainted of his loss. The proposal was agreed by the others. Never be guilty for rudeness. Such behaviour is unworthy to you. She is afraid by a dog. We are now accustomed with these inconveniences. He is resolved of going to Bangalore. She had fallen to the well. He has profited from my loss. I wholly dissent with his opinion, and shall never be reconciled with it. What we did was strictly conformable with our instructions. He has a great resemblance of his father, and especially in his abhorrence against deceit. He is so eager for the pursuit of the object, that there is much difficulty of making him attend on anything else. As a page, he had to attend to his lady, who was glad at his services. This is quite adapted for common use. He has as much reason to be angry at him as at me. He should never be angry with trifles. He ordered for me to be taken in Mysore. Rama has a great resemblance with his father. We have far too many of examinations to be conducive of success. If I was to listen on what you say I should go to home at once. I cannot refrain to say that I believe on his innocence in the crime by which he is charged. You must apologise with him of your remark. I do not know what was the matter to you that you should act such a strange way. I stayed to a large hotel when I was at Calcutta. He increased with height so quickly that he grew out all his clothes. To finish a dispute in hearing abuse at your antagonist is likely do more harm on yourself than on him. As you made an exception of the rule on my brothers favour I hope you will also make one for mine.

Insert suitable prepositions in the following sentences

LXI—The statement was opposed — fact, and he insisted — its withdrawal. To offend — a rule — custom is not a sin, but to persist — it is foolish. It is often wise — pass — the faults — others, but — make light — one's own is folly. A clause was introduced — the Bill — the mover which charged the cost — the action — the owners. The thief was charged — stealing a watch. The work devolved — your brother, but Rama was excited — the success achieved. The girl is so intent — her book that she is deaf — every sound. The sea has encroached — the land and now our house is — danger — being swept away. She has endeared herself — all. Why can he not count — your help? We should bear — the foibles — our neighbours, and refrain — passing judgment — them. The boy was bent — going — school, and as he was short — money — his lunch, I gave him some. Your tutor complained — me — your idleness. The bill is inclusive — all charges — freight and storage. To draw attention — your doings was quite foreign — my purpose. It is not difficult — impose — a simpleton. Are you not grateful — him — his help?

LXII — I am ignorant — the matter — discussion All goods included — the list — which your selection is made are increased — price That parcel is infected — scorpion — your letter I infer that you are in trouble — my brother Parents should impress — their children the need — industry — all they undertake I cannot comply — your request for I do not approve — the project Frequent visiting conduces — health Previous — his death Mr Smith lived — Bristol and the management of the firm's business devolved — him Surprised — the turn — affairs, the banker withdrew — the contest and devoted his energy — his work The soldier met the man he aimed — A miser shrinks — parting — his money The cause you indicate — is open — objection John's passion — which makes him indifferent — pleasures — the kind so popular — his classmates Not all efforts — success are deserving — praise The one — voice — which words are uttered often detracts — the praise they were meant — express To die — hunger is not a disgrace, but to live — the proceeds — fraud is a crime It is not easy to elicit information — a taciturn man Keep clear — debt and be not intimate — men — evil reputation He is — great need — someone to guide him — the management — his estate, who will not only keep him — wasting his money but also protect him — designing men

LXIII — Your path is beset — danger unless your companion can boast — more skill than I give him credit — Agreeably — my partner's wishes I insisted — instant payment — our claim — fulfil If you want to be — good terms — that fellow you must smile — his evil deeds Your plan is open — objection, irrespective — the fact that if it fails you will be liable — damages His carriage is designed — use — good roads only The house is a coral castle — view — the hill The candidate was confident — victory and refused — retire — the contest My father is rich — houses — order to be rid — all responsibility — this matter I agreed — the course he insisted — He is assured — my interest — his progress, and — my constant regard — him His demands — his time are so great that we have to be content — very little — his company The groom rode the horse contrary — his master's orders As I am not conversant — the facts — the case, and you have acted — my consent, I refuse to be responsible — any way — the consequences Hatred is inconsistent — love Attend — your lessons The vessel was attacked — pirates Submit the accounts — my cashier The mother is proud — her son's success Is Mr Strong qualified — the post? Our exemption — tax now is due — no merit — our own The boy was expelled — school Mistrust is destructive — happiness It is not always possible — agree — every one A dispute — his manager — a trifle ended — the latter's dismissal Many vernacular words are derived — Sanskrit Try to elicit — the driver the facts — the accident — consequence — his bad behaviour he was excluded — his club and shunned — his former friends

THE CONJUNCTION

363 Rule XLIII—Co-ordinative Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or sentences, of the same rank or class, Subordinative Conjunctions connect sentences only, one of which is subordinate to the other

In "Birds fly and fishes swim" there are two sentences of equal rank. Such a sentence is called **Compound**. In "Be diligent lest you fail" there are also two sentences, but one is plainly subordinate to the other. Such a sentence is called **Complex**.

Co-ordinative Conjunctions may connect —

(1) Independent Sentences making a compound sentence, as, *My horse fell but I got home safely*

(2) Nouns or Pronouns, as, I call *heaven and earth* to witness, *He and I* travelled together

(3) Verbs, as, They *fought and won*

(4) Adjectives, as, He was a *great and good* man

(5) Adverbs, as, The river flows *slowly and silently*

(6) Phrases, as, *On the mountain and in the valley* the run fell

364 Rule XLIV—Words connected by a conjunction must be of the same class, and in the same construction verbs in the same mood and tense, nouns and pronouns in the same case, as, *He and she* are happy, *He loves and obeys* his father, *He loved and obeyed* his father, *He was* very charitable, and *founded* a hospital

When verbs connected by a conjunction are in different circumstances, they may be in different moods and tenses, the subject being generally, but not always repeated, as, *The steamer arrived in good time last month, but it is late this month*

When several particulars are spoken of collectively or separately, and, or, or nor, is usually prefixed to the last only, as, *He eats, drinks, and sleeps, He neither eats, drinks, nor sleeps*

365 The auxiliary verb is often omitted after *if*, *lest*, *though*, *until*, &c, as, *If he sell it, I cannot prevent him* i.e., *If he should sell, &c*. Some of these conjunctions, and also *that*, are themselves often omitted, as, *Were he not blind, he would acknowledge it* i.e., *If he were not, &c*. *He knows (that) I must sell*

366 Since, as a conjunction, signifies *from which time*

It is followed by a verb in the *past indefinite* tense, and is preceded by a verb in the *present indefinite* or *present perfect* tense, and by a noun denoting some *period* of time—not a *point* of time, as, *Three months have gone since my brother left* It is now a year since it *happened*

367 Than follows adjectives in the comparative, and also rather and other, as, *I would have the book rather than the picture*

A Pronoun after than or as either agrees with a verb, or is governed by a verb or preposition understood, as, *He is wiser than I (am)*, *She loved him more than (she loved) me*

368 Certain conjunctions are used in pairs, and are called **Correlative Conjunctions**, as,

Either, or —It was either the man or the woman

Neither, nor —He will neither go nor stay

Whether, or —Whether he agrees or not, it must be done

Though, yet —Though they paid him well, yet was he unfaithful

As, as —As clear as the sun

As, so —As is the child, so is the man

So, as —He is not so attentive as he was

So, that —He was so determined, that nothing could persuade him

Both, and —It is both cheap and good

If, then —If you saw him, then I yield the point

Because, therefore —Because he sinned, therefore he is unhappy

In poetry, *or* is often used instead of *either* and *not* instead of *neither*, as, "*Or by the lazy Schuldt or wandering Po*" *Not* and *never* are also sometimes thus used, as, *He never tires nor stops to rest*

EXERCISE LXIV

Parse the following sentences —

When blessed with health and prosperity we should cultivate an humble and a compassionate disposition. Speak but the word, and I am ready. Never sport with pain in any of your amusements, nor treat even the meanest insect with wanton cruelty. If we knew how much the pleasures of this life deceive and betray their unhappy votaries, and reflected on the disappointments in pursuit, the dissatisfaction in enjoyment, or the uncertainty of possession, which everywhere attend them

we should cease to be enamoured of these brittle and transient joys, and should wisely fix our hearts on those virtuous attainments, which the world can neither give nor take away

Correct the following errors —

He railed against both you and I Did I not warn you, and begged you to be prudent? They would neither attend themselves, nor suffered others to do so The day is approaching and hastens upon us in which we must give an account of our stewardship Scotland and thee did each in other live Whether he buys, or sell, or exchanges, he discovers the same probity If he understands his business and attend to it, he ought to succeed

I am two years older than her I would rather be a good scholar as a wealthy rajah He attended to no other pursuit but that of cultivating flowers I am certain it was no other than the prince, than who none looks more commanding

It will improve neither the mind or delight the imagination He is in the habit both of writing sermons as well as plays He is as good, if not better, than him Neither the good or the bad are free from reverses It is of no consequence whether he goes nor stays I must be so plain to tell you that it is not the case His sight has become so weak as he can see only indistinctly

THE INTERJECTION

369 An **Interjection** is a word used independently It has no grammatical connection with any part of the sentence in which it is found, and is not strictly a part of the sentence at all

The boy, oh! where was he?
Alas! for the victims of the disaster

In thus swiftly and emphatically giving utterance to an emotion, an interjection sometimes seems to compress into a syllable what might be, though with much less force, expressed in a sentence, as,

Oh, for the touch of a vanished hand!
How I wish I could feel again the touch, &c

370 The interjection **Oh** or **Ah** is very frequently used with a *Nominative of address*, but when the pronoun of address is in the *first person*, the *objective* and not the *nominative* is used, as, Ah me! Oh thou! Oh ye!

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES

Errors to be corrected

LXV —These kind of pleasures relax the mind. He speaks as he was in a passion. The statements are so suspicious as that they require much attention. He made as wise proverbs as any one, him only excepted. I am the man who approves of salutary discipline, and who recommend it to others. Whosoever you send, I shall welcome. Do you know who I mean? The rain has been more universal this monsoon than last. She which relies only on her beauty shows great want of understanding. He is more bold and energetic, but not as wise and studious as his brother. The work was much better executed by his brother than he. He would not do it himself nor let me do it. The advancement of both were remarkable. Yesterday rained heavily, but to day is clear and hot. Both him and me should comply to your request. Unless he applies more he will never be learned. If he was to come, it would afford us pleasure. Either honour or riches is sought. She and him are very unhappily connected.

This adjective, you see we can't admit
But changed to *worse*, will make it just and fit

LXVI —What the heart or the imagination dictate, flows readily. You will find the remark in the second or third pages. Professing regard and to act differently mark a base mind. The woman was speaking to the man, who so graciously called in her needlework. The army was ordered to embark with the utmost dispatch, few days after they landed they came to an engagement with the enemy. He was not cut off by the sword, but there being no water, he died for thirst.

The furser, whose task is not to mingle in the affairs of public life, have its own part assigned it. This carriage is preferable and cheaper than the other. He has eaten no food nor drank no water this two days. I was afraid I would lose my money. Bashfulness and impudence ought to be equally avoided, thus rendering us objects of pity that of aversion. The motions of a vortex and a whirlwind is perfectly similar.

LXVII —In proportion as either of these qualities predominate, the language is imperfect. Be honest, nor take no shape nor semblance of disguise. Unless he have more government of himself, he will always be discontented. We have applied to the collector, in addition to the judge's interest. To compile a dictionary seems, of all others, least practicable in a state of blindness. Of all the essays, mine has the fewest faults. It would have afforded me no pleasure, if I could perform it. I intend to live suitable with my situation. The king and the tyrant are of very different characters, the one rules his people by laws to which they consent, the other by his absolute will and power. This is called freedom, that tyranny. There is no incensed person so desperate, but he cannot provide a knife or pistol, if he be inclined to apply them. I shall be glad when I arrive to my journey's end. I received a parcel containing all of Thackeray's and Dickens' works.

LXVIII —He is a Nero, who is another name for cruelty. He had a great taste of these studies, and therefore improved much with them. Richlieu profited of every circumstance. The objects of a divine and human legislator are very different. You seem to have a prejudice at me. Bad qualities sometimes are overruled remarkably to affect a good end. There are many more shining qualities in the mind, but none so useful as discretion. It is not calculated neither for his present comfort, or intended for his future happiness. From the character of those who you associate with, your own will be estimated. The child who we saw yesterday is judiciously managed. In tracing of his history, we discover little worthy of imitation. By domineering on all his subjects, he lost his kingdom. This was occasioned by swerving out of the path of duty. He went out a captun, but returned a general. The bellows is not good for nothing, there is a hole in its side. He speaks through his sleep. Upon this subject he thought otherwise from him. Power often prevails upon right.

LXIX —It is an error to say that the aloe blooms but once every hundred year. He has shot fifteen braces in one day. Bread-and-butter are wholesome. He valued greatly the favour the queen had granted to him. The rice is high priced just now, and so is the fish. He and you can only succeed if you persevere. The friends and pursuits who please him most are not of service to his reputation. By such a temptation like that, many a youth has fallen. He spoke in a so affectionate manner that I could not but listen to him. Not few churches were burnt down in the fire of London, but more houses. The enemy does not regard such a force which we can bring into the field. Deceit is the merrier of any vice, and only can be cherished by a depraved mind. Lion and tiger, and such carnivorous animals, are more fiercer than the graminivorous. Such friend as has acted the part he did should be gratefully cherished. Dishonesty of Thessalians was proverbial. Few are wise enough to prefer useful reproof before treacherous praise.

LXX —Who did you expect to have seen here? I was neither considering James nor John when I did it. I have neither gold or silver I wish to lay down. A remarkable fine horse. As neither Rama or Govind are going, let you and I go. I saw the secretary and treasurer, and they examined my accounts. Of all other nations, England is the greatest. He told you and I that I will come. Whom do you suppose was going to go for it? There was no one but her in the room. Neither of these boys have learned to read quick. Every member of our families have been introduced to each other. The people in the room was divided into groups. I write a letter that I might have an answer. Neither you or me are invited. Whom was this meant for? They all perished for thirst. How much did his father send him to town with? He rode several driving a herd of oxen on horseback before him. I have no occasion of your services. He divided his property between his four sons. He plunged into and swam across the river. That remark is unworthy notice. A fleet of twenty gunboats were seen. The public is respectfully informed. My love and esteem for him remains unaltered.

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

371. A Sentence is any number of words having a complete meaning, as, *The soul never dies*

The words "From virtue to vice" do not form a sentence, because the sense is incomplete. But the words, "From virtue to vice, the progress is gradual," form a sentence, "because they have a complete meaning."

The *breaking up* of a sentence into its parts to show how they are related to each other, is called its Analysis.

372. Every sentence consists of two parts—the Subject and the Predicate.

The Subject is the person or thing spoken of.

The Predicate is what is said about the subject.

Thus in the sentence, "Rain falls," *rain* is the Subject, and *falls* the Predicate. The subject is the answer to the question made by placing *who* or *what* before the verb.

Sentences are of three kinds—Simple, Complex, and Compound.

I.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

373. A Simple Sentence contains only one subject and one predicate, as, *Birds sing*.

A simple sentence contains only *one* finite verb. If a sentence contains more than one finite verb, it is either *complex* or *compound*.

A *finite* verb is one limited by number, person, &c. A participle or an infinitive mood must not be mistaken for a predicate. The former is to be treated as an *adjective*, the latter as a *noun*.

1. THE SUBJECT

374. The Subject must be a noun or some word or words used in place of a noun.

(1) A Noun. *Rama came. Where is Goring?*

(2) A Pronoun. *He came. They went away.*

(3) An Adjective used as a Noun. *The virtuous are happy.*

(4) A Gerund or Verbal Noun. *Walking is healthy.*

(5) An Infinitive *To lie* is mean

(6) A Phrase *Well begun* is half done

In infinitive sentences the subject is often omitted, as, *Run*=run (you)

Nouns in the vocative are not the subject *Kṛiṣṇa*, may *Rama* come? Here *Rama* is the subject

In some cases, *it*, *this*, and *that* are mere provisional subjects, the real subject coming afterwards, as, It is my ambition to succeed The subject is *to succeed*

Generally, however, except in interrogative sentences, the subject is placed *before* the predicate

EXERCISE LXXI

Point out the Subjects and Predicates in the following sentences

Cæsar defeated Pompey Sin leads to ruin The rainy season follows the hot season The earth is round Painting is one of the Fine Arts He gave me a rupee In 1066 A.D. William the Conqueror invaded England The valley of the Ganges is very fertile The righteous shall flourish as the palm tree Blessed are the pure in heart Day and night at the equator are of equal length Glass is transparent He ought to go home The boy is learning English To succeed, you must be diligent To return good for evil is noble Professing regard and acting differently, marks a base mind

Adjuncts to the Subject

375 As the subject must be either a noun or some word or words which can take the place of a noun, it follows that all its adjuncts must be either adjectives or words which can take the place of adjectives All adjuncts to the subject of a sentence must be *attributive*

In the sentence, Diligent scholars learn, we have—

<i>Simple Subject</i>		<i>Adjunct</i>		<i>Predicate</i>
Scholars		Diligent		Learn

376 Attributive adjuncts are of eight kinds, viz —

(1) An Adjective *Good* milk is wholesome

(2) A Noun or Pronoun in Apposition *William the Conqueror* died The king *himself* was there

- (3) A Noun or Pronoun in the Possessive Case *Rama's book is lost, her dress is torn*
- (4) A Prepositional Phrase *The house on the hill was sold*
- (5) An Adjectival Phrase *A judge, unjust in his conduct, is despised*
- (6) A Participle or Participial Phrase *The men, watching, saw him, Ram, having repeated his lesson, went to his seat*
- (7) An Infinitive or Infinitive Phrase *The wisest course—to leave—did not occur to him*
- (8) A combination of two or more of the above *Govind's best dress is torn, Govind's younger brother, being idle, failed*

EXERCISE LXXII

Point out the Subjects and the Attributive Adjuncts in the following sentences, and state the kind in each case —

Wisdom's ways are pleasantness Evil communications corrupt good manners Denial of a fault doubles it Every day in thy life is a leaf in thy history A little wrong done to another is a great wrong done to ourselves The sense of duty is a great gift One hour to-day is worth two to-morrow The effort to succeed will be crowned with success All men think all men mortal but themselves We forgive our friends their faults The lightning struck him dead Hope springs eternal in the human breast The captain's child, six years of age, was drowned To be happy without friends is impossible Universal pity for the suffering was the motive of his life No man with a proper sense of duty would neglect his parents Knowledge acquired without effort is seldom of much value Attempting to please everybody, he pleased nobody To jump out of bed at the first moment of waking is easy enough to some people Having been censured for idleness, he resolved to do better

THE PREDICATE

377 The Predicate consists of the word or words by which something is stated concerning the subject The predicate always contains a finite verb

378 The simple predicate includes only the verb, as, The fire *burns* The complete predicate includes the verb and all its adjuncts, as, The fire *burns brightly* in the frosty air

Some intransitive verbs express in themselves a full meaning. Such are called *verbs of complete predication*, as, *Birds sing*.

Other intransitive verbs require some word or words to be added to make the meaning complete, and are therefore called *verbs of incomplete predication*. What is thus added to such verbs is called the **Complement**, as, *Gold is heavy*, *The horse seems strong*. The complement of an intransitive verb is always attributive to the subject, and is therefore called a **subjective complement**.

To be is the principal verb of the above class. Except when it denotes existence, as, *God is*, it always requires a complement. Other verbs of incomplete predication are *appear*, *seem*, *become*, *grow*, *live*, *look*, &c. Such verbs are sometimes called *copulative* (uniting), as they do not make complete sense of themselves.

Factive verbs in the *passive voice* are also verbs of *incomplete predication*, and require a *subjective complement*, as, *The prince was crowned king*.

379 In sentences in which the verb is intransitive the predicate may consist of the following —

- (1) A Verb alone. *Rivers flow*
- (2) A Verb with a Noun or Pronoun. *Rama is a teacher*
- (3) A Verb and Adjective. *The coohee is idle*
- (4) A Verb and an Adverb. *My books are here*
- (5) A Verb and an Infinitive. *He came to learn*
- (6) Verb and Participle. *Govind went running*
- (7) A Verb and a Phrase. *The house is in excellent order*

EXERCISE LXXIII

Divide each of the following sentences into **Subject** and **Predicate**. Point out any **Attributive Adjuncts** to the subjects, and any **Verbal Complements** —

The stars twinkle. Lord Lindsay became Viceroy. He is in good health. It is I. The man was of great size. The way was long. To try is the way to succeed. A thing of beauty is a joy for ever. He is poor. Was he happy? The wily thief was caught at last. The run ceased. The moon is shining brightly. Ram appears to be diligent. The timber is yonder. The poor widow came weeping. Rain seldom falls at Aden. The public library in Manchester seems to be the largest in the North of England. The river flowing down the mountain side looks like a silver thread. Through his untiring industry and devotion to study he became one of the most learned men of his day.

The Object, or Completion of the Predicate

380 When the predicate verb is transitive, it has an Object, as, Wellington defeated *Napoleon*

The Object is strictly a part of the predicate, since, with all its adjuncts, it belongs to the group of words by which some statement regarding the subject is made. But on account of its importance, it is treated as a separate part of a sentence.

The Object is a noun or some word or words used as equivalent to a noun.

381 The object in a simple sentence may be

- (1) A Noun or Pronoun Fishermen catch *fish*, He shot *him*
- (2) An Adjective used as a Noun We should pity *the poor*
- (3) A Gerund Govind likes *reading*
- (4) An Infinitive Learn *to labour*
- (5) A Phrase The vakil promised *to attend to the matter*

382 The *object* may be enlarged, like the *subject*, by

- (1) An Adjective The hunter caught a *large* deer
- (2) A Noun or Pronoun in apposition I knew Govind, *your brother*
- (3) A Noun or Pronoun in the possessive case Krishna lost *Rama's* books, He sold *his* house
- (4) A Participle I heard you *talking*
- (5) An Infinitive He has a house *to let*
- (6) A Participial Phrase I saw him *running in the field*
- (7) An Infinitive Phrase The teacher told Rama the course *to be followed by him*
- (8) A Prepositional Phrase I saw the owner *of the field*
- (9) A combination of the above I found the boys *playing in the large compound*

383 Some transitive verbs take two objects. One relating to a thing is called the Direct Object, the other relating to a person is called the Indirect Object.

The indirect object may occur after verbs of *giving, promising, refusing, telling, &c.*, as, His father gave *him* a book. This is sometimes called the *dative object*. It may, or may not, be preceded by the preposition *to*.

384 Verbs of *making, appointing, wishing, &c.*, are called Factitive Verbs. A factitive verb requires a com-

plement, which is sometimes called the **Factitive Object**. A factitive complement to a verb in the active voice is *objective*, to a verb in the passive voice *subjective*.

The factitive complement may be

- (1) An *adjective*, A word of praise makes him *happy*
- (2) A *noun*, They made him *king*
- (3) A *participle*, He kept me *waiting*
- (4) An *infinitive*, Fear made him *run*
- (5) A *phrase*, The news plunged him *into the deepest distress*

EXERCISE LXXIV

Name and describe the Objects in the following, and say of what each consists —

We wished him much joy The sailor taught him swimming The fox paid the crow great attention Cats love to be basking in the sun Through an Alpine village passed a youth A soldier's death thou hast boldly died I saw the boys playing at cricket Leaves have their time to fall We should try to help the sickly poor They ate four ripe mangoes The poor woman has no money to pay for her food He praised him for his courage There is a fine old tree in the garden He taught me to speak English I found him reading in the library Give me an ounce of civet, good apothecary He built a wall six feet high

We ought carefully to avoid putting temptation in the way of others He did not oppose his son's going to sea Practice makes all things easy He promised to send me a copy of his latest volume I wish you good morning Lord Roberts was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the army Criminals are observed to grow more anxious as their trial approaches He seems to have made a very foolish choice

The Extension of the Predicate

385 The Predicate is always a verb It may be enlarged, extended, or modified by an adverb or any word or words equivalent to an adverb Such extensions are called **Adverbial Adjuncts** to the predicate

Adverbial Adjuncts to the Predicate may be

- (1) An **Adverb** The soldier died *bravely*
- (2) An **Adverbial Phrase** Govind studies *now and then*
- (3) A **Prepositional Phrase** He will come *in an hour*

- (4) An Adverbial Objective They walked *three miles*
 (5) A Gerundial Infinitive I shall try *to follow*
 (6) An Infinitive Phrase Govind went *to bring some paper*
 (7) A Participle Govind came *running*
 (8) A Participial Phrase I saw him *standing at the door*
 (9) An Absolute Phrase *The clock having struck six*, we set out,
To tell you the truth, I think him dishonest

386 The above classification is according to *Grammar*. They may also be arranged according to *distinction in thought*

The following are examples

- (1) Time I studied there *three years*
 (2) Place I came *from Calcutta*
 (3) Magnitude He went *four miles*, It measured *three acres*
 (4) Manner He writes *well*
 (5) Agent The defendant was represented *by his zail*
 (6) Instrument He was slain *with the sword*
 (7) Cause He was dismissed *for idleness*
 (8) Purpose He went there *to gain a living*

EXERCISE LXXV

Point out the Adverbial Adjuncts in the following sentences and classify them grammatically —

He was going to Agra His father died a year ago He has a cottage by the sea We arrived in time They sailed along the coast I could not speak for laughing I knocked twice We then marched forward He struck with all his might He built his house on a rising ground He caught cold from not changing his damp clothes How cleverly he talks! I have been a stranger in a strange land They worked day and night Having made these remarks, he sat down

He continued in his evil course for over a year At that moment how vain did his promises seem! We are often deceived by false appearances To day the good news has filled the people with gladness Sinful companions have enticed him from the path of virtue He made his statement twice over without the least variation In all my wanderings I have ever found the greatest happiness in the cottage of the peasant After a little practice he will speak with greater ease When summer comes the days are longer If you will allow me I shall help you when I have finished my lesson As the sun breaks through a dark cloud, so honour shines through the meanest dress

ANALYSIS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES

387 In the analysis of a sentence we break it up into its grammatical parts in such a way as to show the relation which these parts bear to each other. The essential parts of every sentence are (1) a **Subject**, and (2) a **Predicate-Verb**. A simple sentence has only one subject and one predicate-verb. The subject, which must be a noun or noun-equivalent, may be enlarged by one or more **Attributive Adjuncts**. If the predicate-verb be intransitive it may stand alone, or it may have a **Subjective Complement**. If it be transitive and in the active voice it *must* have a **Direct Object**, and *may* have an **Indirect Object**, an **Objective Complement**, and one or more **Adverbial Adjuncts**. Like the subject, the object must be a noun or noun-equivalent, and may be enlarged by one or more **Attributive Adjuncts**.

388 In analysing a simple sentence proceed as follows

(1) Set down the **subject** of the sentence. In imperative sentences this is often not expressed.

(2) Set down the **predicate-verb** of the sentence. This must be a finite verb, with number and person—not a participle or an infinitive.

(3) If the verb be transitive and in the active voice, set down the **direct object**, and, if there be one, the **indirect object**. If the verb be intransitive set down the complement, if there be one.

(4) Set down the **attributive adjuncts** to the subject.

(5) Set down the **attributive adjuncts** to the object.

(6) Set down the **adverbial adjuncts** to the predicate.

389 The following points should be carefully noted —

Interrogative sentences should be treated as *assertive*, as, Where are you going? should be analysed as, You are going where?

The noun or pronoun in an absolute clause is not to be confounded with the subject of the sentence. The raja having died, his son succeeded him.

Copulative verbs cannot alone form a predicate. The nouns or adjectives with them, which they connect with the subject, form part of the predicate, as, I *am* sorry (pred.)

The introductory particle *there* is reckoned with adverbial extensions

390 Sentences may be analysed either in the **Detailed Form** or the **Tabular Form**. The former enables the sentence to be divided to any extent, the latter has the great advantage of clearness.

391 The following is an example of the Detailed Form
 SENTENCE — *The warlike Romans subdued the whole country with great rapidity*

KIND OF SENTENCE — Simple

SUBJECT — Romans

ATTRIBUTIVE ADJUNCTS TO SUBJECT — (1) The (2) warlike

PREDICATE — Subdued

OBJECT — Country

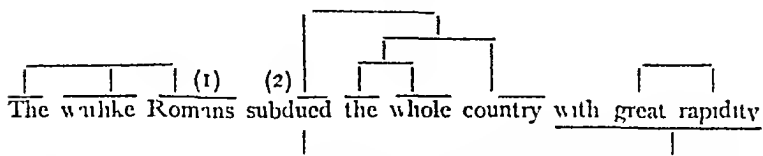
ATTRIBUTIVE ADJUNCTS TO OBJECT — (1) The (2) whole

ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS TO PREDICATE — With great rapidity

392 The Tabular Analysis would be as follows

SUBJECT		PREDICATE				
Subject Noun	Attributive Adjuncts	Finite Verb	Complement	Adverbial Adjuncts	Object	Attributive Adjuncts to Object
Romans	(1) the (2) warlike	subdued		with great rapidity	country	(1) the (2) whole

393 Sometimes a simple graphic form is used, which shows very clearly the dependence of the various parts of a sentence. In this form the figure (1) is used to mark the subject, (2) to mark the predicate verb, and the relation of part to part is indicated by lines, those showing an adverbial relation being placed below the words. Thus —



One or two other examples may be given of the analysis of simple sentences

SENTENCE	SUBJECT		PREDICATE				
	Subject Noun	Attributive Adjuncts	Finite Verb	Complement (Ind Obj)	Adverbial Adjuncts	Object	Attributive Adjuncts to Object
Rama gave Govind a book yesterday	Rama		gave	Govind (Ind Obj)	yesterday	book	a
It would be very wrong for you to do so	(It) in apposition to "to do so"		would be	very wrong	for you		
A visit to the British Museum will soon prove to any one of us our vast ignorance	visit	(1) ² to the British Museum	will prove		(1) soon (2) to any one of us	ignorance	(1) our (2) vast
The horse, terrified by the lightning, ran away at full speed	horse	(1) The (2) terrified by the lightning	ran		(1) away (2) at full speed		
The brave soldiers defended their post to the last	soldiers	(1) The (2) brave	defended		to the last	post	their
"Imperial Caesar, dead and turned to clay, might stop a hole to keep the wind away"	Cæsar	(1) Imperial (2) dead (3) turned to clay	might stop		to keep the wind away	hole	a
"At a small distance from the house my predecessor had made a seat overshadowed by a hedge of hawthorn and honeysuckle"	Predecessor	my	had made		at a small distance from the house	seat	(1) a overshadowed (2) by a hedge of hawthorn and honeysuckle.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

Analyse the following sentences —

The battle of Marathon secured the liberty of Greece. A wise son maketh a glad father. Ambition often puts men upon performing the meanest offices. The good alone are happy. An hour like this may well display the emptiness of human grandeur. A desire to excel will stimulate to exertion. I did give the fellow a trifle. Tall oaks from little acorns grow. Solomon, the son of David, built the splendid temple at Jerusalem. Pride, that never-failing vice of fools, is not easily defined. To create creatures liable to wants, is to render them susceptible of enjoyment. By a wise provision of Providence, the inferior animals have not the gift of speech. The complaints of the old man excited the indignation of the bystanders. The blow did the Saracen but very little injury. Then shook the hills by thunder riven.

The dog was named "Jack" by my little daughter. Wearied with our long fast, we determined to risk the descent. To climb the higher peaks is at any time a dangerous thing. To have to work hard for his daily bread is no disgrace to any man. All but he had gone. I asked him his business quietly. During the early part of the day, dark clouds rose above the horizon. London, the capital of the British Empire, and the largest city in the world, is situated on the Thames, a river in England. A refined mind loves to contemplate the works of Nature. Hope, the balm of life, soothes us under every misfortune.

All silently the little moon
Drops down behind the sky

Him the Almighty Power
Hurled headlong flaming from the ethereal sky,
With hideous ruin and combustion, down
To bottomless perdition

Night, sable goddess ! from her ebon throne,
In rayless majesty now stretches forth
Her leaden sceptre o'er a slumbering world

To seek thee did I often rove
Through woods and on the green

Full many a gem of purest ray serene
The dark, unfathomed caves of ocean bear,
Full many a flower is born to blush unseen,
And waste its sweetness on the desert air

From the ale-house and the inn,
Opening on the narrow street,
Came the loud convivial din,
Singing, and applause of feet

Silently, one by one, in the infinite meadows of heaven,
Blossomed the lovely stars, the forget-me-nots of the angels

II THE COMPLEX SENTENCE

394 A COMPLEX SENTENCE consists of a Principal Sentence with one or more Dependent or Subordinate Sentences, as, I shall see you *before you leave*, I am very anxious *that he should pass*, Govind, *whom I met yesterday*, said *that his brother, who left Calcutta last month, had just returned*

The parts in *italics* are the subordinate sentences. Each sentence makes a complete sense, but the *full meaning* of a subordinate sentence is not felt till it is joined to the principal sentence. A subordinate sentence is generally called a Clause.

395 Subordinate Sentences or Clauses are of three kinds *Noun, Adjective, and Adverbial Clauses*

396 A Noun Clause is one which does the work of a noun. A noun clause—

(1) May form the Subject, as, *Who broke the glass* cannot be ascertained

(2) May form the Object, as, He said *that you were wrong*

(3) May be in apposition to some other noun or pronoun, as, The hope *that he will be pardoned* is now abandoned

(4) May be the Complement of a verb, as, His belief was *that Krishna would succeed*

(5) May be under the government of a preposition, as, He sold his horse for *what he gave for it*

397 Noun clauses are joined to the principal sentence by conjunctions, relative pronouns, or interrogatives, as, *that, who, what, where, when, how, &c*. *That* is often omitted before an objective clause. I know (*that*) he is right

398 An Adjective Clause does the work of an adjective. It may—

(1) Qualify the Subject. He *who restrains his anger* is wise

(2) Qualify the Object. They ate all the fruit *which we had gathered*

(3) Form part of the Complement of the verb Govind is a boy *whom you taught*

(4) Form part of an Adverbial Adjunct to the verb The captain went into the ship *which sailed away*

An Adjective Clause can only be introduced by a relative pronoun or a relative adverb When the relative pronoun is in the objective case it is often omitted, as, Is that the boy (*whom*) you saw?

399 An Adverbial Clause is one which has the power of an adverb

It may be attached to—

(1) The Subject To study *when we are unwell* is trying

(2) The Object He likes to play *when school is over*

(3) The Predicate I come *when I can*

(4) A Participial Clause Having finished my work *before he came*, I could leave at once

Adverbial Clauses are introduced by relative and interrogative adverbs

400 Two or more subordinate clauses may depend on the same principal sentence, as, The carpenter *whom I paid to-day* can go home *when he likes*

401 Sometimes one subordinate clause is contained within another, as, Krishna said he would come back *when he had finished the work*

402 When some portion of a subordinate clause is *left out*, the sentence is termed *elliptical*, He is stronger than I (am strong)

ANALYSIS OF COMPLEX SENTENCES

403 In analysing complex sentences observe the following rules —

(1) Find out first the *principal sentence*

(2) Ascertain the *dependent clauses* To find them look out the *finite* verbs, each of them means a clause If a finite verb is understood, supply it

(3) Under the head, "Sentences and Clauses," write out the sentences or clauses in the order of prose. If they are long, give the first and last words, marking the omission by asterisks.

(4) Find those clauses, if any, which attach themselves to the *subject* of the principal sentence.

(5) Find those clauses, if any, that belong to the object of the principal sentence, or to any other noun or pronoun in it.

(6) Look for the clauses that are attached to the predicate of the principal sentence.

(7) Classify the clauses according to the *function* they discharge. Does a clause stand for a noun? Does it qualify a noun? Does it limit a verb?

(8) Pick out the connective word by which any one clause is joined to another. If understood, supply it. *What* equal to *that which*, enters both into the principal sentence and the adjective clause.

404 It should be noted that the grammatical function of a clause is not in the least indicated by the connective word which introduces it. Either a noun clause or an adjective clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb, as

I have not heard *who he is* (noun)

The thief, *who was a servant*, is caught (adj.)

I do not know *where he has gone* (noun)

The place *where it happened* is unknown (adj.)

405 The tabular form is generally preferable in the analysis of complex sentences. On the next two pages a complete analysis of the following sentences is given in tabular form —

(1) To be content with what is sufficient is the greatest riches, for he who increases his riches increases his cares.

(2) That man is worthless who knows how to receive a favour, but not how to return one.

(3) General Washington, who beheld all day with unspeakable anguish the useless slaughter of his brave troops, skilfully withdrew his army, which was dispirited by desert, from Long Island to New York by night, under cover of a dense fog.

(4) This celebrated city, which contains many interesting objects, and is frequented by numerous pilgrims from all parts of India, some of whom bring valuable offerings, lies on the northern bank of the Ganges.

SENTENCES and CLAUSES	Kind of Clause	(on relative word)	SUBJECT		PREDICATE				Attributive & adjunct to object
			Subject proper	Attributive adjuncts	Verb	Com- plemen- t	Adv. (adj.) Adjunct	Object	
(1) To be content with what is sufficient is the greatest riches	Principal		To be content with what is sufficient (inf. noun clause)		is	the greatest riches			
(2) What (=that which) is sufficient	Adj. clause to the obj. after <i>riches</i> in (1)	(which)	(which)		is	sufficient			
(3) He who increases his riches increases his care	Adverbial clause to verb in (1)	for	he	who increases his riches	increases			care	his
(4) Who increases his riches	Adj. clause to subject of (3)	who	who		increases			riches	his
(1) That man is worth less	Principal		man	(1) that (2) who knows--return one	is	worth less			
(2) Who knows how to receive a favour	Adj. to subject in (1)	who	who		knows			how to receive a favour	
(3) (Who knows) not how to return one.	Co-ordinate with (2) and Adverbially to subject of (1)	(who)	(who)		(knows)		not	how to return one	

SENTENCES and CLAUSES	Kind of Clause	Con- nective word	SUBJECT		PREDICATE				Attributive Adjuncts To Object
			Subject proper	Attributive Adjuncts	Verb	Com- plement	Adverbial Adjuncts	Object	
(1) General Washington skillfully withdrew his arms from Long Island to New York at night, under cover of a dense fog,	Principal		General Washington		withdrew		(1) skillfully (2) from Long Island to New York (3) at night, (4) under cover of a dense fog	army	his
(2) Who beheld all day, with unspeakable anguish, the useless slaughter of his brave troops,	Adjective clause to subject of (1)	who	who		beheld		(1) all day, (2) with unspeakable anguish	slaughter	(1) the (2) useless (3) of his brave troops
(3) which was dispirited by defeat.	Adjective clause to object of (1)	which	which		was	dispirited	by defeat (adv. to complement)		
(1) This celebrated city lies on the northern bank of the Ganges,	Principal		city	(1) this (2) celebrated	lies		on the northern bank of the Ganges		
(2) which contains many interesting objects,	Adjective clause to subject of (1)	which	which		contains			objects	(1) many (2) interesting
(3) and is frequented by numerous pilgrims from all parts of India,	Adjective clause to subject of (1) subordinate with (2)	and	(which)		is	frequented	by numerous pilgrims from all parts of India (adv. to complement)		
(4) Some of whom bring valuable offerings	Adj. clause to 'pilgrims' in (3)	of whom	some		bring			offerings	valuable

EXERCISE LXXVII

Analyse the following complex sentences —

Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown

The severity of this remark I bore patiently, because I knew that it was just

Sir Isaac Newton was the first who showed that every ray of light from the sun consists of different colours

Having visited the house where my grandfather was born, we went round the town, whilst my father called upon his lawyer

When he was born, who brought him up, how he lived, and whither he went after he was lost sight of, we are not told

As I was going out with that resolution, I was met at the door by the captain of a ship with whom I had formerly some little acquaintance, and he agreed to be my companion

It was so hot in the valley that we could not endure the garments which we had found too thin when we were higher up among the mists

Considering that the subject upon which he is engaged is quite new, he has really made great progress

It is interesting to notice how some minds seem almost to create themselves, springing up under every disadvantage, and working their solitary but irresistible way through a thousand obstacles

The part of the mill she liked best was the topmost storey, where were the great heaps of grain, which she could sit on and slide down continually

Alas! the meanest herb that scents the gale,
The lowliest flower that blossoms in the vale,
Even when it dies, at spring's sweet call renews
To second life its odours and its hues

No flocks that range the valley, free,
To slaughter I condemn,
Taught by that power that pities me,
I learn to pity them

And what delights can equal those
That stir the spirit's inward deeps,
When one that loves and knows not, reaps
A truth from one that loves and knows

See some strange comfort every state attend,
And pride, bestowed on all, a common friend,
See some fit passion every age supply,
Hope travels through, nor quits us when we die

Let all the ends thou aims't at be thy country's,
Thy God's and Truth's

Ill fares the land, to hastening ills a prey,
Where wealth accumulates and men decay

III THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

406 A COMPOUND SENTENCE consists of two or more simple or complex sentences joined together by a conjunction or relative pronoun, as, My house was sold, *and* I left the country, This is the book *which* I lost

407 Each part of a compound sentence is in itself a *complete grammatical whole* There is no interdependence, the two or more parts being *co-ordinate principal clauses* In the majority of cases they could equally well be separate sentences, but being related in thought they are thrown together and united by a co-ordinative conjunction or a continuative relative

408 Compound sentences may be divided into the following classes —Cumulative, Adversative, Illative, and Alternative

409 In a cumulative sentence one clause is simply added to another, as, Govind rode *and* Rama walked

The conjunctions most frequent in cumulative sentences are *and, also, as well as, besides, likewise, moreover, &c*

Sometimes the conjunctions are omitted, and the co ordinate sentences are separated by commas or semicolons, as, I came, I saw, I conquered Such sentences are sometimes said to be *collateral*, or placed *side by side*

410 In an adversative sentence one clause is opposed to another, as, He could read, *but* he could not write

The chief adversative conjunctions are *but, yet, still, however, never,theless, on the other hand, notwithstanding*

411 In an illative sentence one clause expresses the cause, and the other the effect of that cause, as, It rained heavily, *therefore* we went indoors

The chief illative conjunctions are *therefore, wherefore, consequently, hence, accordingly, for, since, inasmuch as*

412 In an alternative sentence one statement or the other is to be taken, as, Win this fight *or* die

The conjunctions are *either—or, or, else, other-wise* Where both statements are denied, *neither—nor* are used

413 Contracted Sentences are those in which the repetition of subject or predicate is avoided by the use of a conjunction, as, I gave money and (I gave) clothing, Either you (must pay) or I must pay

Sometimes two or more nouns are the *conjoint subject*, as, Rama and Krishna are cousins This is not a contracted sentence

ANALYSIS OF COMPOUND SENTENCES

414 Compound Sentences are analysed as simple sentences, with the connecting link pointed out If the subject, object, or verb in any of the clauses be understood it must be supplied Thus "either you or I must attend to this matter" should be analysed by first separating the clauses, "You must attend to this matter," "I must attend to this matter" Connective, either—or

415 Parenthetical sentences are independent of the constructions in which they occur

Parenthetical sentences are those put in among others complete with out them, as, The steamer left Bombay on the 8th inst, and, this for all who were on board, went down in mid ocean four days later

416 Sentences may be partly compound and partly complex, and a mixed sentence of this kind may be joined to another mixed sentence by some co-ordinative conjunction But the same principles of analysis apply to all

417 The following sentences are analysed in tabular form —

- (1) "Be good, sweet maid, and let who will be clever,
Do noble deeds, not dream them all day long,
And so make life, death, and that vast forever,
One grand, sweet song"

"Each separate star
Seems nothing, but a myriad scattered stars
Break up the night, and make it beautiful"

CLAUSES	Kind of Clause	Con- nective Word	SUBJECT		PREDICATE					
			Subject proper	Attributive Adjuncts	Verb	Com- plement	Adverbial Adjuncts	Object	Attributive Adjuncts to Object	
(1) He good, sweet maid	Co ordinate with (2) (3) (4) and (5)		(thou) in appo- sition with 'Sweet maid'		be	good				
(2) Let (them) he clever	Co-ordinate with (1) (3) (4) & (5)	and	thou		let	be clever		them		
(3) Lo (thou) noble deeds	Co ordinate with (1) (2) (4) & (5)		thou		do			deeds	noble	
(4) Do not dream them all day long	Co ordinate with (1) (2) (4) & (5)		thou		do dream			(1) not (2) all day long	them	
(5) And so make life, death, and thou vast forever one grand sweet song	Co ordinate with (1) (2) (3) and (4)	and	thou		make	one grand sweet song	so	(1) life (2) death (3) for ever	(1) that adj to (3) (2) vast adj to (3)	
(6) Who will (be clever)	Adjectival to object of (2)		who		will	be clever				
(1) Each separate stars seems nothing	Co ordinate with (2) and (3)		star	(1) each (2) separate	seems	nothing				
(2) A myriad scat- tered stars break up the night	Co ordinate with (1) and (3)	but	stars	(1) a myriad (2) scattered	break up			night	the	
(3) A myriad scat- tered stars make it beautiful	Co ordinate with (1) and (2)	and	stars	(1) a myriad (2) scattered	make	beau- tiful		it		

EXERCISE LXXVIII


Analyse the following Compound Sentences —

Neither a borrower nor a lender be,
For loan oft loses both itself and friend

He will act honourably in this matter, or I shall be greatly disappointed

Can honour's voice provoke the silent dust,
Or flattery soothe the dull cold ear of death?

The dying king begged to be attended by his confessor, but she denied him even this comfort

 The vine still clings to the mouldering wall,
But at every gust the dead leaves fall

The faculty of imagination is the great spring of human activity, and the principal source of human improvement

Our deeds shall travel with us from afar,
And what we have been makes us what we are

The curfew tolls the knell of parting day,
The lowing herd winds slowly o'er the lea,
The ploughman homeward plods his weary way,
And leaves the world to darkness and to me."

After a sharp quarrel over this question, La Bourdonnais, whose fleet was scattered by a tremendous storm, sailed back with the surviving ships to the Mauritius, leaving the French in temporary possession of Madras, under an agreement that if the ransom were paid it should be restored to the English within three months

The chief outcome of this sharp wrestle between the two Companies at close quarters on a narrow strip of sea coast, was a notable augmentation of the French prestige in India, and great encouragement to Duplex in his project of employing his troops as irresistible auxiliaries to any native prince whose cause he might choose to adopt

Oh blindness to the future! kindly given,
That each may fill the circle marked by heaven,
Who sees with equal eye, as God of all,
A hero perish, or a sparrow fall,
Atoms and systems into ruin huddled,
And now a bubble burst, and now a world

The soul of music slumbers in the shell,
Lill waked and kindled by the master's spell,
And feeling hearts, touch them but rightly, pour
A thousand melodies unheard before

WORD-BUILDING

418. A word in its simplest form is called a **Root**, as, *man, good, see*. It is also called a **Primitive**, or first word.

The proper *root* may be different from the simplest form of the word now in use. *Tal*, number, is the root of *tale, tell, talk*. The stem is the root with some change. *Love* (=lov + e) is the stem of *lov*. It is to the stem that all inflections are added. Thus to *lov* we add *d* for the past tense.

419. From the simple or primitive words, called roots, we form other words, chiefly in two ways.

1. *By adding to the word another word*, as, black-board, ink-stand, door-way, hand-writing, &c. Words so formed are called **Compound Words**.

2. *By changes in a word*.

These may be of two kinds.

(1) *A change may be made in the root*, as, *strike, stroke, bind, bond, food, feed*.

(2) *By adding some letter or letters either at the beginning or end of a word*, as, *like, unlike, ever, never, man, manly, good, goodness*.

The letters placed *before* are called **Prefixes**¹, those placed *after* are called **Suffixes**,² or **Affixes**³.

Words formed from other words are called **Derivatives**.

Derivative means *drawn from*, like a channel from a river.

420. Words formed by changes in the root are called **Primary derivatives**, those formed by means of prefixes or suffixes are called **Secondary derivatives**.

FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS

421. **Compound Nouns** may consist of —

(1) **Two Nouns** placed side by side.

Rule 1, teaspoon, cowherd, housetop, rosebud, bloodhound, hound, eyel.

¹ *Pre* means *before*.

² *Sub, suf*, means *under, after*.

³ *Ad, af*, means *to*.

Many compound nouns are formed in this way. Usually the first word qualifies the second. When the connection between the two is very close, they are written as one word. When such is not the case, they are separated by the mark -, called a hyphen, as, dog cart, foot-
rice, finger post.

(2) A Noun followed by a Verbal Noun in -er (denoting *agent*) or -ing (denoting *process*)

Shoemaker, bricklayer, lampighter, penwiper, enginedriver, soothsayer, taxgatherer, &c. Shoemaking, bricklaying, lampighting, penwiping, enginedriving, soothsaying, taxgatherimg, &c.

(3) A Noun preceded by an Adjective

Nobleman, black bird, freeman, redbreast, greenhouse, quicksilver, highland, sixpence, goodwill, Roundhead, stronghold, sweetheart, madman, quicksand, &c.

(4) A Noun preceded by a Verb

Pickpocket, telltale, turncoat, grndstone, stopgap, spendthrift, catchpenny, breakfast, wagtail, cutthroat, skinsint, turnkey, makeshift, breakwater, pastime, &c.

In these cases the verbal part is transitive, and usually governs the noun.

A noun preceded by a gerund may be included under this head: looking glass, bathing-place, writing desk, walking-stick, spelling book.

(5) A Noun preceded by an Adverb or Preposition

By-path, forethought, undergrowth, inside, outside, overcharge, afternoon, onlooker.

(6) By the union of other parts of speech

Outry, runway, drawback, income, hearsay, onset, go between, farewell, welfare.

422 Compound Adjectives may consist of—

(1) Noun and Adjective

Sky blue, blood red, sea green, snow-white, nut-brown, ice cold, blood heart, pulse proud, breast-high, way-weary, blood thirsty.

(2) Adjective and Adjective

Blue black, red-hot, dead-alive, worldly-wise.

(3) Noun and Participle

Heart rending, spirit-stirring, time serving, sea faring, house-keeping,
moth eaten, earth born, tempest-tossed, way-laid

(4) Verb and Adverb

Underdone, outspoken, over-fed, ill pleased, well bred, thorough bred

423 Compound Verbs may consist of—**(1) Noun and Verb**

Backbite, browbeat, wrylay henpeck, hoodwink

(2) Adjective and Verb

Whitewash, fulfil, rough-hew

(3) Adverb and Verb

Foretell, outbid, overthrow, cross question, outdo

424 Compound Adverbs may consist of—**(1) Noun and Noun**

Lengthways, endways

(2) Noun and Adjective

Herd foremost, breast high, meanwhile, always, sometimes, otherwise

(3) Noun and Preposition

Upstairs, indoors, above-board, outside

(4) Adjective and Adverb

Somewhere, everywhere, somehow

(5) Adverb and Adverb

Henceforward, therewith

(6) Adverb and Preposition

Hereafter, thereon, whereupon, forthwith, thereby

425 Compound Prepositions are chiefly composed of a preposition and a noun, or two prepositions, as, outside, inside, throughout, within, without, into, upon

426 Compound Conjunctions are almost always due to the union of an adverb with some other word, most commonly either another adverb or a preposition, as, nevertheless, whereat, whereby, however, moreover, otherwise and likewise

PRIMARY DERIVATIVES

427 Primary Derivatives are formed by making some change in the body of the root

Nouns

428 (1) Nouns have been formed from Verbs by changing the root vowel —

Drive, drove, bless, bliss, sing, song, strike, stroke

(2) A change is sometimes made in the final consonant sound —

Speak, speech, prove, proof, advise, advice, live, life, dig, ditch, practise, practice

(3) In some cases both sounds, vowel and consonant, are changed —

Choose, choice, lose, loss, live, life, clothe, cloth

Adjectives

429 Adjectives are formed by changing the vowel or the final consonant of the root —

Heat, hot, fill, full, pride, proud, milk, milch

Verbs

430 (1) Verbs are formed from Nouns by changing the vowel sound —

Blood, bleed, knot, knit, gold, gild, food, feed, bond, bind

(2) By a change in the final consonant sound —

Price, prize, thief, thieve, half, halve, sooth, soothe

(3) By a change in both sounds —

Bath, bathe, breath, breathe, glass, glaze

431 By the above changes some intransitive verbs receive a transitive or causal sense —

<i>Intrans</i>	<i>Trans</i>	<i>Intrans</i>	<i>Trans</i>
Fall	fell	Rise	raise
Drink	drench	Lie	lay
Droop	drop	Sit	set
Stoop	stop	Cling	clench

SECONDARY DERIVATIVES

432 Secondary Derivatives are formed from primary words by adding letters either at the beginning or end of words, called **Prefixes** or **Suffixes**

Prefixes and Suffixes, like the words themselves, are of three classes—of English, Latin, or Greek origin

433 ENGLISH PREFIXES

A has several meanings. The following are some of the principal —

(1) Is a corrupted form of *an* it is prefixed to nouns and adjectives, as, *abed, afoot, ashore, a leap*

(2) When prefixed to certain words it means *off up, from*, as, *awake, arise, alight, afar*

(3) An intensive force, as *ahungered, aweary, athirst, abide*

After, following, as, *afternoon, afterthought*

All, all *almighty, almost, alone*

At, at, *atone*

Be, corrupted from *by*, has several meanings —

(1) It changes nouns and adjectives into transitive verbs, as, *befriend, becalm, beguile*. In *behead* it has a privative force

(2) It turns some intransitive verbs into transitive, as, *be mourn, bespeak, befall*

(3) It intensifies the force of transitive verbs, as, *bedaub, besmear, beseech, besprinkle*

(4) Prefixed to nouns, and adjectives, it forms adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, as, *beside, beyond, between, betwixt, because, &c*

Em, or en, to make, to give, as, *endear, enslave, empower*

For, through, thorough, as, *forget, forgive*. In *forbid*, it has a negative sense

Fore, before, as, *foresee, foresight, foremost*

Gain, against, as, *gainst*

In, in, as, *income, inborn, into*

Mis (shortened from *miss*), *wrong*, as, *mistake, mislead, mistrust*

N (shortened from *no*), *not*, as, *none, neither, never*

Off, away, offshoot, offspring, offscouring

On, on, as, *onlooker, onset*

Out, beyond, as, *outbid, outdo, outgrow, outlive*

Over, above, too much, as, *overflow, overhang, overcharge*

To, *the or this*, as, *to day, to night, to morrow*

Un has three meanings —

(1) *not*, as, *unclean, unkind, untruth, untest*

(2) *back*, as, *untie, undo*. In *unloose* it is only intensive

Nouns to which it is prefixed are changed into verbs,
as, *unman, unhorse, uncarth*

(3) *on*, as, *unto, until*

Under, *beneath, below*, as, *undersell, underground*

Up, *upward*, as, *uplift*

With, *back, against*, as, *withhold, withstand*

ENGLISH SUFFIXALS

Noun Suffixes

434 Denoting *agent or doer*

-ar, *beggar, liar*

-ard, *coward, drunkard, sluggard, wizard*

-art, *braggart*

-eer, *auctioneer, mutineer*

-er, *baker, builder, rider, weaver*

-ier, *cashier, clothier, courtier*

-or, *sailor, tailor*

-ster, *songster, spinster, youngster, gamester*

-yer, *lawyer, Sawyer*

435 Denoting *state or being*

-age, *anchorage, bondage, homage, herbage*

-dom, *kingdom, freedom, serfdom, exiledom*

-hood, *childhood, brotherhood, knighthood*

-ing, *reading, writing, blessing*

-ness, *darkness, whiteness, goodness*

-red, *hatred, kindred*

-ric, *dominion, bishopric*

-ry, *finery, peasantry, Jewry*

-ship, *friendship, hardship, lordship, fellowship*

-t, *gift, cleft, draught*

-ter, *laughter, slaughter*

-th, *growth, health, length, truth*

-y, *beggary, slavery*

436 Denoting *smallness or diminution*

-el, *satchel*

-en, *chicken, kitten, maiden*

- et, *floweret, lancet, violet, pocket*
- ie, *doggie, lassie, laddie*
- kin, *hambkin, mannikin, napkin, pipkin*
- let, *booklet, leaflet, streamlet*
- ling, *duckling, gosling, darling, foundling*
- ock, *bullock, hillock*
- y, *daddy, derry, baby, Johnny*

437 Adjective Suffixes

- ed (added to nouns, like *ed* in the past participle of verbs),
booted, gifted, feathered, scented, coloured, rooted
- en, *made of, earthen, golden, leaden, silken, wooden*
Golden hair means only hair of the colour of gold We
saw a *gold* chain for one made of gold
- ern, *region, quarter, eastern, northern, southern, &c*
- fold, *denoting multiplication, twofold, manifold*
- ful, *full, fruitful, hopeful, truthful, deceitful*
- ish, (1) added to nouns, changes them into adjectives, *boyish, childish, foolish, slavish*
(2) added to adjectives, weakens their force, *blackish, whitish, sweetish*
(3) *denoting nationality, British, English, Spanish, Turkish*
- less, *wanting, heedless, houseless, lawless, senseless*
- ly, *like, kingly, manly, heavenly, cleanly*
- some, *partaking of a certain quality, troublesome, handsome, gladsome, wholesome, meddlesome*
- teen, *ten, thirteen, fourteen*
- ty, *tens, twenty, fifty, &c*
- ward, *direction, homeward, landward, toward*
- y, *of the nature of, when added to nouns, hairy, rocky, healthy, wealthy*

438 Verb Suffixes

- en, *to make, darken, thicken, lengthen, strengthen*
- er, *frequentative¹, chatter, patter (pat), batter (beat), flutter (flit), glimmer (gleam)*
After adjectives -er is causative, *linger (long), lower, hinder*
- le, *frequentative, dabble, prattle, handle, sparkle*
- k, *frequentative, hark (hear), talk (tell)*
- se, *to make, cleanse, rinse*
- y, *to make, sully, worry*

¹ Denoting doing a thing often

439 Adverbial Suffixes

- re, *place where*, here, there, where
 -es, -se, -ce, -s (sign of the possessive), *unwares*, sometimes,
 besides, else, hence, thence, needs, sideways, lengthways,
 once
 -ly, *like*, badly, goodly, purely, sweetly
 -ling, -long, *direction*, darling, headlong, sidelong
 -om (Old English dative termination), seldom, whilom
 -ther, *direction towards*, hither, thither
 -ward, -wards, *direction*, homeward, downwards, inwards
 -way, -ways, *always*, straightway, anyway
 -wise, *anywise*, otherwise

FORMATION OF DERIVATIVES

NOUN DERIVATIVES

440 Nouns are derived from other Nouns

(1) *By means of prefixes* —

After—aftercrop, afternoon, afterpiece

By —bylaw, byroad, bystander

Fore—foreman, forenoon, forerunner

In —income, inroad, insight

Mis —mistake, misdeed, mishap

Out —outhouse, outlaw, outlook

Up —upland, upshot, upstart

Most words of this class come under the head of Compound Nouns

(2) *By means of suffixes* —(a) Those denoting the *agent* or *doer*

Beggar, drunkard, auctioneer, gardener, comter, taylor,
 songster, lawyer

(b) Those denoting *state* or *being*

Anchorage, childhood, reading, peasantry, friendship,
 beggary

(c) *Diminutives*

Satchel, chicken, floweret, lambkin, booklet, duckling,
 lillock, lassie, doggie

441 Nouns are derived from Adjectives

By means of suffixes —

Youngster, drunkard, freedom, dardness, goodness, false
 hood, finery, truth, strength, warmth

442 Nouns are derived from Verbs

By means of suffixes —(a) Those denoting the *agent* or *doer*

Beggar, speaker, braggart, sailor, spinster

(b) Those denoting *state* or *being*Hatred, laughter, flight (fly) death (die) deed (do),
health (heal)

ADJECTIVE DERIVATIVES

443 Adjectives are derived from Nouns

*By means of suffixes —*Ragged, earthen, fruitful, foolish, childish, leathern,
houseless, lawless, kingly, warlike, seaward, healthy, stormy

444 Adjectives are derived from other Adjectives

(1) *By means of prefixes —*

Unclean, unkind, untrue

(2) *By means of suffixes —*Greenish, weakly, gladsome, wearisome, tenfold, sixteen,
sixty

445 Adjectives are derived from Verbs

*By means of suffixes —*Printed, married, trodden, stolen, roaring, blazing,
shining

VERB DERIVATIVES

446 Verbs are derived from Nouns —

(1) *By means of prefixes —*Bedew, befriend, encircle, encompass, empower, unheard,
unroof(2) *By means of suffixes —*

Sparkle, lengthen, strengthen

447 Verbs are derived from Adjectives

(1) *By means of prefixes —*

Bedim, embitter

(2) *By means of suffixes —*

Shorten, sweeten, soften, lower, cleanse.

448 Verbs are formed from other Verbs

By means of prefixes —

Awake, besmear, forbid, forget, mislead, foretell, enfold,
outlive, uphold, withhold

ADVERB DERIVATIVES

449 Adverbs can be formed from many Adjectives by adding *ly*, as, free, free*ly*, bold, bold*ly*, bitter, bitter*ly*, first, first*ly*, merry, merry*ly*, pretty, pretty*ly*

Some Adverbs are formed from Nouns, as foot, whole, aside

Adverbs are formed from Participles by adding *ly*, as knowing*ly*, willing*ly*

Some are derived from Prepositions, as, upward, downwards, within

COMBINATION OF METHODS

450 Many words owe their origin to a combination of *two or more* of the above methods of forming nouns, adjectives, &c, as, *untruthfulness, unenlightened*

INFLUENCE OF ACCENT

451 Many words are used both as nouns and adjectives, nouns and verbs, or adjectives and verbs, without any change in pronunciation. But a number of dissyllables have the accent on the first syllable in one case, and on the second in the other. Verbs of this class invariably take the accent on the *last syllable*. The following are examples

NOUN	ADJECTIVE	NOUN	VERB
August	august'	Accent	accent'
Compact	compact	Conduct	conduct'
Minute	minute	Contract	contract'
		In'cense	incense
		In'crease	increase'
ADJECTIVE	VERB	Per'veit	pervert'
Ab'sent	absent	Pre'fix	prefix'
Pre'sent	present	Sur'vey	survey'
(adj. or noun)		Torment	torment
Frequent	frequent	trib'ute (n)	tribute
Also the following trisyllable —			
Attrib'ute (n)			

LATIN AND FRENCH PREFIXES

452 Numerous Latin Prefixes are employed in word-building. Most have come direct from the Latin and are unchanged. Others, which have come to us from the French, are slightly altered as, *contra*, against, becomes *counter*.

Prefixes take different forms, in some cases, for the sake of euphony. Thus *ad* takes the forms mentioned below.

A, *ab*, *abs*, signifying *from*, *away*, as, *a* vert, *ab* solve, *abs*-tract.

Ad (sometimes becoming *a*, *ae*, *af*, *ag*-, *al*, *an*-, *ap*, *ar*-, *as*, *at*-), *to*, as, *ad* ore, *as* cend, *ac* cept, *af*-fix, *ag* grivate, *al*-lure, *an*-nex, *ap* peal, *ar*-range, *as* sist, *at*-tract.

Ambi, *amb*, *am*, *around*, *about*, *on both sides*, as, *ambi* guous, *ambi* tion, *am* putate.

Ante, *anti*- (French *an*), *before*, as, *ante* diluvian, *anti* cipate, *an* cestor.

Bene, *well*, as, *bene* fit, *bene* volence.

Bi, *two*, *bis*, *bin*, *twice*, as, *bi* ped, *bis* cut, *bin* ocular.

Circum (*circu*), *around*, as, *circum* navigate, *cir* cut.

Con (Latin *cum*, French *con*) (*co*, *cog*-, *col*, *com*, *cor*, French *coun*), *with*, *together*, as, *con* tract, *co* here, *cog* nite, *col* lect, *com* mit, *cor* rection, *comm* cil.

Contra-, **contro** (*counter*), *against*, as, *contra* dict, *contro* vert, *count*er act.

De, *down*, *from*, as, *de* pose, *de* throne.

Demi, *half*, as, *demi* god.

Dis, *di*, *dif*, *apart*, *reversal*, as, *dis*-pel, *di* late, *dif* fusion.
French *des*, *de*, *dis* cent, *de* sert.

E-, **ex**, (*ee*, *ef*), *out of*, as, *e* ducc, *ex*-tract, *ex* centric, *ef* face.
French forms, *es*-, *is*-, *s*, as, *es* cape, *is* sue, *s* ample. In the words *amend* and *astomish*, the *e* has become a.

Extra-, *beyond*, as, *extra* ordinary. French *is*, *s*-, as, *es* trange, *s* tranger.

In, *il*, *im*, *ir*, *in*, *into*, *on*, *against*, as, *in* vert, *il* lustrate, *im* pute, *ir* ruption. French forms, *en*, *em*, as, *en* act, *em* ploiy.

In many words the Prefix can be spelt either as the Latin *in*, or as the French *en*, as, *in* quire or *en* quire.

En, or *em*-, before Nouns and Adjectives changes them into Inactive Verbs, as, *en* dear, *em* bitter.

In-, *ig-*, *il* , *im-*, *ir-*, *not* , *as*, *in-firm*, *ig-noble*, *il legal*, *im portant*, *ir-regular*

Inter-, *between* , *as*, *inter vene*

Intro , *to*, *within* , *as*, *intro duce* French *entre* , *enter-tain*

Juxta , *near to* , *as* *juxta-position*

Male-, *mal-*, *badly* , *mal* *volent*, *mal-treat*

Mis , French from the Latin *minus*, *less*, *badly* , *mis* *fortune*

Non-, *ne-*, *neg* , *not* , *as*, *non-sense*, *ne* *furious*, *neg* *lect*

Ob , *oc-*, *of-*, *op* , *os* , *against*, *in front of* , *as*, *ob* *ject*, *oc* *cure*, *of* *send*, *op* *pose*, *os* *tentation*

Pene, *almost* , *pen* *insular*

Per , *pel-*, *through* , *as*, *per*-*fect*, *pel*-*lucid*, *pel* *grim* French *par* , *par-don*

Post-, *after* , *as*, *post*-*script*

Pre-, *before* , *as*, *pre*-*fix*

Preter-, *past*, *beyond* , *as*, *preter*-*natural*

Pro-, *por-*, *pol-*, *for*, *fore*, *forth* , *as*, *pro*-*noun*, *por*-*trait*, *pol*-*lute* French *pur-*, *pur*-*pose*

Re , *red* , *back again* , *as*, *re* *form*, *red*-*emption* The presence or absence of a hyphen after *re* in Verbs affects the meaning To *recover* in umbrellas means to get it back , to *re-cover* it means to put a new cover on it

Retro , *back-ward* , *as*, *retro* *grade* French *rear* , *as*, *rear*-*guard*, *car* , *arrêts*

Se , *aside*, *apart* , *as*, *se* *duce*, *se* *cede*

Semi , *half* , *as*, *semi*-*circle*

Sine , *sim* , *sin-*, *without* , *as*, *sine* *cure*, *sim*-*ple*, *sin*-*cure*

Sub , *suc-*, *suf* , *sug-*, *sum-*, *sup* , *sus* , *under*, *after*, *up* , *as*, *sub* *versurer*, *sub* *scribe*, *suc* *ceed* *suf*-*fer*, *sug* *gest*, *sum*-*mon*, *sup* *port*, *us* *pend*

Subter-, *under*, *beneath* , *as*, *subter* *fuge*

Super , *above*, *beyond* , *as* *super* *natural* French *sur* , *sur*-*vey*

Trans (tra-), *across*, *beyond* , *as*, *trans*-*gress*, *tra* *dition* French *res* , *trans* *pass*

Tri , *three* , *as*, *tri* *angle*, *tri* *une*

Ultra-, *beyond* , *as*, *ultra* *liberal*, *out*-*rage*, O French, *outrage*

Unus (un , *uni-*), *one* , *uni*-*animous*, *uni*-*form*

Vice- (*vis-*), *instead of* , *as*, *vice*-*roy*, *vis*-*count*

Many hybrid words are formed by the union of Latin prefixes with English roots , *as*, *dis* *own*, *dis* *like*, *dis* *trust*, *endear*, *en* *lighten* , *re* *lay*, *re* *set*, *re* *call*, *sub* *let*, &c

LATIN AND FRENCH SUFFIXES

453 These are very numerous, and some of them have different meanings. The principal are given below —

454 Noun Suffixes

(1) Denoting chiefly the *agent* or *doer of a thing*

an, -ain, en, *artisan*, *Roman*, *captain*, *warden*, *citizen*
 ant, ent, *merchant*, *servant*, *vagrant*, *student*, *regent*
 ary, -ar, aire, *missionary*, *notary*, *scholar*, *millionaire*
 -ate, -ite, -it, *candidate*, *advocate*, *favourite*, *Israelite*, *hermit*
 eer, ier, er, *volunteer*, *engineer*, *soldier*, *messenger*, *prisoner*
 -ess, -trix, signs of feminine, from -ix, and later Latin, -issa
 -iff, -ive, *plaintiff*, *bailiff*, *relative*, *native*, *captivity*
 -or, -our, -eur, *ancestor*, *doctor*, *emperor*, *saviour*, *matru-
 ee*, -ey, y, *grantee*, *payee*, *examinee*, *attorney*, *jury*, *levy*

(2) Denoting *action, being, or state of being*

-acy, cy, *accuracy*, *delicacy*, *supremacy*, *secrecy*
 -age, *bondage*, *marriage*, *postage*, *message*, *damage*
 -al, *arrival*, *dismissal*, *refusal*, *trial*, *nuptials*
 -ance, ancy, *abundance*, *assistance*, *brilliance*, *hesitancy*
 -ence, -ency, *diligence*, *excellence*, *patience*, *decency*, *urgency*
 -ery, -ry, *coolery*, *slavery*, *bravery*, *bribery*, *musketry*
 -ice, -ise, -ess, *varice*, *justice*, *exercise*, *merchandise*, *pro-
 -ion, on, om, action, admission, opinion, lesson, ransom*
 -ity, ty, *scarcity*, *captivity*, *equality*, *certainly*, *poverty*
 -ment, *agreement*, *complement*, *employment*, *payment*
 -mony, *ceremony*, *patrimony*, *matrimony*, *parsimony*
 -or, -our, -eur, *error*, *liquor*, *colour*, *labour*, *honour*, *grandeur*
 -tude, *gratitude*, *latitude*, *longitude*, *magnitude*, *solitude*
 -ure, *agriculture*, *capture*, *depression*, *pleasure*, *torture*
 -y, *envy*, *industry*, *memory*, *misery*, *victory*

(3) Denoting *Diminutives*

-el, -le, *parcel*, *morsel*, *damsel*, *angle*, *buckle*, *circle*
 -cule, -icle, -cile, -icil, *animalcule*, *article*, *domicile*, *codicil*
 -et, -ot, *bullet*, *chariot*, *parrot*
 -ette, *cigarette*, *novellette*, *statuette*, *wagonette*
 -ule, *globule*, *capsule*, *pilule*, *nodule*

This is also used in a general sense, as, *ridicule*. So with *le*, *is*,
fable, *miracle*, *people*

455 Adjective Suffixes

(1) Denoting *of* or *belonging to*

- al, animal, mortal fatal national regal, plural
 -an, ane, -ain, pagan, human humane, mundane certain
 ant, abundant, ignorant constant vacant, brilliant
 ar, angular, solar, lunar familiar popular, vulgar
 -ary, customary contrary, ordinal necessary, secondary
 -ic, ique, aquatic domestic, public oblique, unique
 -il, ile, -le, -el, civil, fragile frail infantile, cruel, gentle
 -ine, canine asinine elephantine, masculine, feminine
 -ory, prefatory, auditory, compulsory, promissory

(2) Denoting *full of*, *consisting of*, *given to*

- ate, accurate, fortunate estimate, obstinate
 -lent, opulent, fraudulent, violent corpulent
 -ose, ous, verbose, bellicose, glorious, dangerous, furious

(3) Various meanings

- id, quality, rapid, timid, acid, stupid, liquid, solid
 -ble, *porter in a passive sense*, curable, portable, incredible
 -ive, *porter actively*, active, transitive, legislative, imitative
 -escent, growing, becoming, putrescent, effervescent, quiescent

456 Verb Suffixes

The following suffixes denote *to make* or *cause to be*, in Verbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives —

- ate, agitate, cultivate, facilitate, nominate, separate
 -fy, beautify, glorify, magnify, purify, stupefy, simplify
 -ish, brinish, finish, diminish, publish, replenish, polish

The suffix *-esce* means a state of growing or becoming, as, effervesce, coalesce

457 GREEK PREFIXES

A-, an-, *without, not*, as a-tom, an-thesis

Amphi-, both, two, as, amphitheatre, amphibious

Ana-, up, through, again, as anathema

Anti-, ant-, against, as, antipathy, antagonist

Apo-, ap-, aph-, from, away from, as, apostate, apologue, aphorism

Arch-, archi-, chief, head, as, archbishop, architect

Auto-, self, as autograph

Cata-, cath-, down, as, catastrophe, catholic

- Dis, di, *twice*, as, *dis* phthong, *dis* syllable
 Dia-, *through*, as *dia* meter, *dia* logue
 Dys, *ill, amiss*, as, *dis* entry, *dys* pepsia
 Ec, ex-, *out, from*, as, *ex*-odus, *ec* centric
 En, em-, *in on*, as, *en* demie, *em* phasis
 Endo, *within*, *endo*-genous
 Epi, *upon, to*, as, *epi* taph, *epi*-stle
 Eu, ev, *well, good*, as, *eu* logy, *ev* angel, *eu* angelist
 Ex, ec, *out, out of*, as, *ex* odus, *ec* stris
 Exo, *without*, as *ex*-ogenous, *ex* otic
 Hemi, *half*, as, *hemi* sphere
 Hyper-, *over*, as *hyper* critical
 Hypo, *under*, as, *hypo* thesis
 Meta-, Meth-, *after, across, beyond*, as, *meta* phor, *meta* physics, *meth* od
 Para, par, signifying *besides* (as if for comparison, and hence it sometimes denotes *similarity* and sometimes *contrast*), as, *para* llel, *par*-ody, *para* dox, *para*-ble, *para*-graph
 Peri, *round about*, as *peri* plery, *peri* patetic
 Pro, *before*, as *pro* logue
 Syn-, sy, syl, sym, *together, with*, as, *syn* tax, *sy* stem, *syl* lable, *sy* m pathy

GREEK SUFFIXES

458 Noun Suffixes

- ic, ics, denoting *abstract nouns*, as, music, logic, optics
 isk, a *diminutive*, as asterisk, obelisk
 -ism, -asm, *state of being*, as sophism, schism, clasm
 sis, sy, se, *action*, crisis, analysis, dropsy, eclipse
 st, -te, t, *agent*, botanist, apostate, poet
 ter, tre, *instrument or place*, metric, centre, theatre
 y, *quality or state of being*, philosophy, monarchy, melancholy
 The suffixes -ism and -ist are largely used for English and Latin roots,
 as well as for Greek

459 Adjective Suffix

- ic, -ical Ic is a Greek suffix *nal* has the Latin *al* added to the Greek Comic, comual, magic, magual, politu, politual

460 Verb Suffix

- ize, ise, *to make*, civilize or civilise, baptize, criticise It is used like ism and ist

FIGURES OF SPEECH

461 Language is *figurative* when the words used are not to be understood in their simple and literal signification, but in one suggested by the imagination of the speaker, and therefore appealing to the imagination of the hearer. Figures serve not merely to embellish language, but often to give to it a point and force that it could not otherwise have. Frequently, also, an idea is conveyed by a single figurative word with a clearness and precision that could hardly be attained by any number of words used literally.

462 Figures of speech may be divided into four classes according as they are based on (1) **Resemblance**, (2) **Contrast**, or (3) **Association**, or are merely figures of **Construction**.

I. FIGURES BASED ON RESEMBLANCE

463 These are by far the most numerous and important. The resemblance is generally between things *widely different in nature*, and is usually of such a character as to require the play of imagination to detect it. In a figure which assists the understanding by illuminating an idea as by a sudden flash of light, it will invariably be found that the word or words used figuratively *deal with the commoner and more familiar perceptions or thoughts*. In the use of figures of resemblance, the mind draws upon the *simple and concrete* in thought and speech to define, elucidate, or illustrate, the *abstract* and less known.

464 The chief figures of resemblance are (1) **Simile**, (2) **Metaphor**, (3) **Personification**, and (4) **Apostrophe**. (5) **Hyperbole** and (6) **Euphemism** are closely connected with these, and **Allegory**, **Parable** and **Fable** are more or less elaborated modes in which some of them are used for special purposes.

465 **Simile** is the figure of direct comparison. To explain or illustrate some aspect or relation of the thing spoken of it is compared with something else *essentially different*. Similes are generally expressed by means of such words as *like* or *as*, but it must not be supposed that whenever these words are used there is a simile. The *difference in nature* of the things compared is essential to the figure. In such sentences as "My horse is like yours" or "She is as good as her sister," there is no figure whatever, the individuals compared being of the same class. But in "My horse goes like lightning," or "She is as good as gold," there are similes. The following are examples of this figure —

- (1) My doctrine shall drop as the rain, and my speech shall distil as the dew
- (2) Pleasures are like poppies spread,
You seize the flower, its bloom is shed
- (3) Sweet are the uses of adversity,
Which, like the toad, ugly and venomous,
Wears still a precious jewel in its head (*Shakespeare*)

466 In **Metaphor** the resemblance between two objects is expressed without the aid of such words as *like*, *as*, etc., by the *simple transfer* of the name itself, or some word or words expressing an attribute or action, from one object to the other. Metaphor has been called the *figure of identification* because the objects compared are, for the moment, treated by the mind as identical. It has also been called *implied simile*, because while the similitude is *recognised* it is not *expressed*.

467 As metaphor invariably implies simile the figures may generally be interchanged, but metaphor is always the stronger and more emphatic, and has the additional point and force that is given by brevity.

- (1) The Assyrian came down like a wolf on the fold (*simile*)
The Assyrian wolf came down on the fold (*metaphor*)
- (2) He was a lion in the fight (*metaphor*)
He fought like a lion, or He was as a lion in the fight (*simile*)

468 All language, whether of savage or civilised man, is full of metaphors. The reason of this is to be found in the constant effort which, consciously or unconsciously, all men make to express their more abstract ideas in the simple and familiar language of sense or common experience. Thus we say, a *ray* of hope, a *flash* of wit, a *hard* heart, a *sweet* temper, a *dead* silence, &c. In English a great number of such expressions are in continual use, and their metaphorical character is commonly lost sight of. Such expressions have been very aptly called "fossil poetry."

469 The following are examples of metaphors appropriately used —

- (1) Stars are the *daisies* that adorn
The *blue fields* of the sky
- (2) Athens, the *eye* of Greece, *Mother* of arts and eloquence
- (3) Sleep that knits up the *ravel'd* sleeve of care,
The *death* of each day's life, sore labour's *bath*,
Balm of hurt minds, great nature's *second course*,
Chief nourisher in *life's feast* (Shakespeare)
- (4) There is a *tide* in the affairs of men
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune,
Omitted, all the *voyage* of their life
Is bound in shallows and in miseries
In such a *full sea* are we now afloat,
And we must take the *current* when it serves,
Or lose our venture (Shakespeare)

470 **Mixed or Confused Metaphors** — In the use of metaphors care must be taken not to throw together in the same passage two or more diverse similitudes, but to maintain the same comparison throughout. The following are examples of mixed metaphors —

A torrent of superstition consumed the land (Here superstition is represented first as *water* and then as *fire*)

Hope, the balm of life, darts a ray of light through the thickest gloom (Here hope is represented first as a *medicine* and then as a *light*)

471 If a simile follows a metaphor in the development of the same image or thought, the resemblance upon which the metaphor is founded should be continued in the simile, as —

The day is done, and the darkness
 I alls from the wings of night,
 As a feather is wafted downwards
 From an eagle in his flight (Longfellow)

472 In **Personification** we implicitly assign personality and intelligence to inanimate objects by treating them as living beings or ascribing to them personal attributes or actions

1. The gray eyed morn smiles on the frowning night,
 Chequering the eastern clouds with streaks of light
 (Shakespeare)

In the following description of the reflection of the stars in the waves of the sea, we have a series of verbs every one of which carries on and develops the figure of personification —

And every wave with dimpled face
 That *leaped* upon the air,
 Had *caught* a star in its embrace,
 And *held* it trembling there

473 In *smiling morn, whispering waves, thirsty ground, prattling brooks, angry waves*, etc, we have both personification and metaphor, and such expressions are often called **Personal Metaphors**

474 **Apostrophe** is a form of personification. It consists in a direct address of inanimate things as though they were endowed with life and reason, as —

- (1) *O death*, where is *thy* sting? *O grace*, where is *thy* victory
- (2) With *thee*, *sweet hope*, resides the heavenly light
- (3) *O liberty*, what crimes have been committed in *thy* name!
- (4) *O mischief*, *thou* art swift
 To enter in the thoughts of desperate men (Shakespeare)

475 **Hyperbole** is the figure of *over-statement*. It is often expressive of strong emotion, or is due to the mind's natural love of the marvellous, or to a strong desire to awaken wonder or rouse attention. Hyperbole is generally allied with either metaphor or simile. The following are examples of this figure —

- (1) With the rapidity of lightning the dragoons charged
- (2) So frowned the mighty combatants, that hell
Grew darker at their frown (*Milton*)
- (3) The sky shrink upwards with unusual dread
And trembling Tiber dived beneath his bed (*Dryden*)
- (4) I could a tale unfold whose lightest word
Would harrow up thy soul, freeze thy young blood,
Make thy two eyes like stars, start from their spheres,
Thy knotted and combined locks to part
And each particular hair to stand on end
Like quills upon the fretful porcupine (*Shakespeare*)

476 **Euphemism** is the figure of *under-statement*, and is in that respect the opposite of Hyperbole. By euphemism we tone down the language in which we refer to things harsh or unpleasant. If we speak of death as "a happy release," or refer to one who is habitually given to falsehood as "occasionally deviating from the strict truth," we employ *euphemisms*. So does the historian who describes the later life of Henry VIII as "sadly clouded by domestic disagreements."

477 An **Allegory** is a story in which the things spoken of are not introduced for their own sakes, but as representing other things which are the real subject of the story. There is always more or less resemblance between the things actually spoken of and those which they are used to represent, and the true meaning of the allegory is unfolded as the story proceeds. Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress* is an allegory, in which, under the guise of a pilgrimage, Bunyan sets forth the incidents of the Christian's life, his struggle with evil, his encouragements and discourage-

ments, etc. Allegory cannot properly be classed under Metaphor, though it is closely allied to it

478 A **Parable** is a short allegory, in which the common incidents and events of daily life are used to illustrate or enjoin some moral truth. The most perfect examples of parable are to be found in the *New Testament*

479 A **Fable** is in many respects similar to a parable. It is a short story based upon personification. Its incidents, therefore, are not the incidents of common life, but imaginary and impossible ones. The fable is, like the parable, used to point or enforce some moral truth, as, the fable of *The Fox and the Grapes*, or any of *Æsop's*

II FIGURES BASED ON CONTRAST

480 **Antithesis** is the figure of simple contrast, and is used when two epithets or phrases of almost opposite meaning are placed side by side, or in close succession, as —

- (1) Speech is silver, but silence is golden
- (2) Contrasted faults through all his manners reign,
Though poor, luxurious, though submissive, vain,
Though grave, yet trifling, zealous, yet untrue,
And e'en in penance, planning sins anew (*Goldsmith*)

481. **Epigram** is the figure of wit. Its point consists in the coupling of words or phrases which apparently contradict each other. An epigram is usually a short, pithy saying, the true meaning of which is in contrast with the merely literal meaning of the words employed, as —

- (1) The child is father to the man
- (2) When all speak, none hear
- (3) A little more than kin and less than kind (*Shakespeare*)

482 **Irony** is the figure of *disguise* or *dissimulation*. What is meant is the opposite of what is said, but what is said is uttered in such a manner, or under such circumstances, as to make it perfectly clear that the opposite is

intended What is said is generally complimentary and what is intended derogatory Irony, it has been said, 'praises in ridicule and thus condemns with scorn' Thus
No doubt ye are the people and wisdom will die with you

III FIGURES OF ASSOCIATION

483 **Metonymy** is the substitution of the name of one thing for that of another, the context showing clearly what is meant It may be the *cause* for the *effect*, the *place* for the *inhabitant*, the *sign* for the *thing signified*, etc , as —

- (1) The *sceptre* shall not depart from Judah (i e , the *royal power*)
- (2) When he had drunk the *fatal cup* (i e , the *poison in it*)

484 **Synecdochy** is the figure by which the part is put for the whole, or the whole for the part, the context again showing what is really intended , as —

- (1) A score of *summers* have passed away (i e , *years*)
- (2) *Gray hairs* are here and there upon him (i e , *signs of age*)

IV FIGURES OF CONSTRUCTION

485 **Transferred Epithet** This consists in the transfer of an epithet from the person or living being to whom it actually belongs to some inanimate thing , as —

The ploughman homewards plods his *wearry way* (i e , the *wearry ploughman* homeward plods his way)

This figure must not be confounded with personification with which it has nothing in common save the grammatical order of words It is merely a figure of construction

486 **In'errogation** is the figure whereby an interrogative form is used without an interrogative sense, the purpose being not to ask a question but to make an *emphatic assertion* , as —

He that planted the ear, shall He not hear ? He that formed the eye, shall He not see ?

487 The figure of **Exclamation** is an exclamatory form similarly used to make a *strong assertion*, which may or may not be accompanied by intense feeling, as —

- (1) What a terrible accident it was !
- (2) Oh ! what a noble mind is here o'erthrown (*Shakespeare*)
- (3) How do Thy mercies close me round ! (*Wesley*)

488 **Climax** is a figure in which the sense advances by successive steps from what is of less to what is of more importance or interest. The name means a *ladder*, an *ascending scale*. Climax may apply equally to a series of words in a sentence, to a series of sentences in a paragraph, or to a series of paragraphs. The following passages contain climaxes —

- (1) This our life, exempt from public haunt,
 Finds tongues in trees, books in the running brooks,
 Sermons in stones, and good in everything (*Shakespeare*)

(2) Actions approved by the conscience are commended to practice, when practised they become easy and then pleasurable, and are in consequence frequently repeated. But frequent repetition engenders habit, and thus what at first was difficult becomes in time almost a second nature.

- (3) Giving all diligence add to your faith, virtue, and to virtue, knowledge, and to knowledge, temperance, and to temperance, patience, and to patience, godliness and to godliness, brotherly kindness, and to brotherly kindness, charity. (*St Paul*)

489 **Anti-Climax** or **Bathos**, is the opposite of Climax. It is a descent from the higher to the lower, from the sublime to the ridiculous. Hood's poems are full of anti-climaxes, as —

- (1) (the storm) seemed to rise
 Bulky and slow upon the southern braid
 Of the horizon,—lanned by sultry sighs,—
 So black and threatening, I cannot think
 Of any simile, except the skies
 Miss Wiggins sometimes shades in Indian ink
- (2) I or months still I lingered in hope and in doubt,
 While her form it grew wasted and thin,
 But the last dying spark of existence went out,
 As the oysters were just coming in

PUNCTUATION

490 PUNCTUATION is the art of indicating with greater clearness, by points or stops, the meaning of sentences, and the pauses to be made in reading and speaking

491 The principal points are, the **Comma** (,) which represents the shortest pause, the **Semicolon** (;) which marks one longer, and separates clauses less closely connected, the **Colon** (:) which marks a longer pause still, and looser connection of clauses, and the **Period** (.) or full stop, which indicates that the sentence is completed

THE COMMA [,]

492 When several words of the same class follow one another, without conjunctions, commas are placed between them, as, Reputation, virtue, happiness greatly depend on the choice of companions

(1) When several words of a class follow each other, a comma is placed between the last two, although the conjunction is expressed, as, Ireland, France, Spain, and Portugal are in the west of Europe

When words of the same class follow each other in pairs, a comma is placed between each pair, as, Truth is fair and useless, simple and sincere, uniform and constant

(2) The members of a compound sentence, an introductory clause and the rest of a sentence, are generally separated by commas, as, He studies diligently, and makes great progress

(3) *Co ordinate* clauses are separated by commas, as, The judge, having heard the evidence, gave his decision When a clause is *restrictive*, no comma is used, as, A judge receiving bribes cannot administer justice

(4) When *that* is a *conjunction*, a comma is usually placed before it, as, Be diligent, that you may prosper

(5) Words denoting the person or object addressed, and words placed in apposition, are separated by commas, as, My son, give me thy heart

(6) Words which express opposition or contrast are separated by a comma, as, He was learned, but not pedantic

(7) When a verb, or any other important word, is omitted, its place is sometimes supplied by a comma, as, From law arises security, from security, inquiry

(8) Adverbial and modifying words and phrases are sometimes separated by commas, as, Finally, let me repeat what I stated before

(9) Explanatory clauses are separated by commas, as, The vessel was oblong, three feet in length, two feet in breadth, and eight inches in depth

(10) A word or phrase emphatically repeated, is separated by a comma, as, Turn ye, turn ye, why will ye die?

THE SEMICOLON, [,]

493 When a sentence consists of two parts, the one complete in itself, and the other added as an inference, or to give some explanation, they are separated by a **semicolon**, as, Economy is no disgrace, for it is better to live on a little, than to outlive a great deal

When a sentence contains an enumeration of several particulars, the clauses are generally separated by semicolons, as, Philosophers assert that Nature is unlimited in her operations, that she has inexhaustible treasures in reserve, that knowledge will always be progressive, and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries of which we have not the slightest idea

THE COLON, [:]

494 When a sentence consists of two parts, the one complete in itself, and the other containing an additional remark, the sense but not the syntax of which depends on the former, they are separated by a **colon**, as, Study to acquire the habit of thinking no study is more important

When an example or quotation is introduced, it is sometimes separated from the rest of the sentence by a colon, as, The Scriptures give us an amiable representation of the Deity in these words "God is love"

THE PERIOD, [.]

495 The **Period** is used at the end of all sentences, unless they are interrogative or exclamatory, as, Cultivate the love of truth

The **Period** is also used after abbreviations, as, K C B, for Knight Commander of the Bath

VARIOUS MARKS

496 The Note of Interrogation (?) is used after sentences which ask questions, as, Whence comest thou ?

497 The Note of Exclamation (!) is used after words or sentences which express emotion

It is used either immediately after *Ah*, or after the next word, as, *Ah !* me, or *Ah* me ! With *O* it is used after some intervening word, as, *O* my friends !

498 The Dash (—) is used to mark a break or abrupt turn in a sentence, as,

Here lies the great—False marble, where ?
Nothing but sordid dust lies here

499 The Parenthesis () is used to enclose an explanatory clause or member of a sentence, not absolutely necessary to the sense, as,

Know then this truth (enough for man to know),
Virtue alone is happiness below

The dash is sometimes used to enclose a parenthetical clause

500 An Apostrophe (') is used in the following cases

- (1) When a letter is left out, as, There's a way, low d
- (2) When a word is shortened, as, *tho'* for *though*
- (3) To denote the possessive case of nouns, as, Govind's book
- (4) To indicate the plural of letters and figures, as, 7's, mind your p's and q's

501 Quotation marks, inverted commas (" "), are used to indicate a quotation

A quotation within a quotation is usually marked by single inverted commas (' ') "But one in a certain place testified saying, 'What is man, that thou art mindful of him ?'"

502 Brackets [] are used to enclose a word or phrase which supplies an omission or corrects a mistake

503 A Brace connects two or more words or lines, as,

{ He almost succeeded alone,
{ He succeeded almost alone

INDEX

Sectional Headings are printed in SMALL CAPITALS, Words and Phrases referred to in heavy type, and prefixes and suffixes in *italics*. The numbers refer to paragraphs

- a (Preposition), 202
a or an, use of, 256
 with a series of nouns, 272
a, 433, 452
 (On) 190 (2)
 Adjectives with, 255
about, 202
Absolute Nominative, 227-8
Abstract Nouns, 25, 42
 formation of, 25
 from Adjectives, 83
Accent, 8, 451
Active voice, 123 5
ADJECTIVE THE, 58 84
 SYNTAX OF, 245-255
 position of in regard to noun,
 254-5
Adjective Clause, The, 398
Adjective Derivatives, 443 5
Adjective Pronouns, 42
Adjective Suffixes, English, 437
 Greek, 459
 Latin, 455
Adjectives of Quality, 60 70
 of Quantity, 71 75
 as titles 274 (3)
 comparison of, 61-70
 with no Positive, 65
 formation of compound, 422
 used as nouns 83 265
 used attributively or predica-
 tively, 58, 245
ADVERB THE, 15, 177-185
 SYNTAX OF, 341 348
Adverb Derivatives, 449
Adverbial Adjuncts, classes of, 385-6
 Clauses, 399
 Phrases 183 341
 Relatives, 108
 Suffixes, 419
Adverbs distinguished from Prepositions,
 192
Adverbs classification of 181
 comparison of, 182
 formation of, 184
 may qualify sentences, 177
 position of, 145
Adverbs of time and place as reported
 speech, 336 7
after, 202
 acc 435 454
ago, before, 336
Agreement of verb and subject, 20,
Ah me! 201
all, 202 274 (2)
all that, 286
Allegory, The, 477
Alphabet, English, defective, 5
Alternative Conjunctions 196
always, 347
Analysis of Sentences, 371 417
 Examples of, 172, 178, 182
another, 202
Antecedent, 99, 290
 sometimes a clause, 287
anterior, 247
Anti Climax 489
Antithesis, Figure of, 480
any, 202, 249
any some, 74
Apostrophe, The, use of, 500
 as a plural sign, 47
 as a sign of possession, 50 1
Apostrophe, Figure of, 474
appoint, 299
Apposition, 231
 ar, 434, 454 (1)
ARTICLE, THE, 10 77 79
 SYNTAX OF, 256 274
 omitted, 268 9
 position of, 274
 when not used, 258-60
Article with two adjectives, 260
 with two nouns, 270 1
as, 202, 274 (1)
 a relative, 106, 293
as as, as so, 100, 368
as far as, 199
as though, 199
as well as, 220
Association, Figures of, 483-4
at, 431, 452
at and in with nouns of time, 358
 with nouns of place, 354
Attributive Adjuncts, classes of, 376
AUXILIARY VERBS, 153 157
 omitted, 365
Bathos, Figure of, 489
be, 154
 case following, 303
 in conditional sentences, 317
 with adverbs 247
because therefore, 368
before, 202
beholden, 149 n

- believe, 209
better, 202
bid, 202
-*ble*, 73 (1)
both, 207, 273 (1)
both and, 368
Brace, the, Use of, 503
Brackets, Use of, 502
bridegroom, 28 (14)
but, 202
 as relative, 107, 203
 as Preposition, 192
by, 202
by no means, 313
can, 153, 161, 165
 use of, 105
call, 209
Capitals, Use of, 4
Cardinal numbers, 73 (1)
Case, 19-56
 in Old English, 50
Causative Verbs, 171
 derivation of, 131
chiefly, 347
Class names, 22
Clauses, Noun, 396
 Adjective, 399
 Adverbial, 399
 kind of, not indicated by connective word, 401
Climax, Figure of, 488
Cognate Object, 175, 297, 300
Collateral Sentences, 409
Collective Nouns, 23
 as subject, 212
Collective Noun, Relative of, with plural verb, 213
Colon, the, Use of, 494
Comma, the, Use of, 492
Common Gender, Words of, 27
Common Nouns used as Proper, 27
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, 60-67
 of Adverbs, 182
Comparative Degree, Use of, 60, 70, 216
 double, 60
 followed by *than*, *of*, or *to*, 217
 with *other*, 216
Complement, Subjective, 127, 245, 378
 Objective, 122, 259
 of Participle Verbs, 171
Complex Sentences, 363
 Analysis of, 303
Compound Conjunctions, 199
 Interrogatives, 110
 Names, Possessive of, 53, 237
 Nouns, Plural of, 46
 Prepositions, 190 (2)
 Relatives, 105
Compound Sentences, 363
 Analysis of, 444
 Words, 7, 419
 Formation of, 421
Concord, 204
Concrete Nouns, 20
Conditional Sentences, 34
 without *if*, 230
Confused Metaphors, 470
Conjoint Nouns, Possessive of, 54
Conjoint Subject, 413
Conjugation of Verbs, 144
CONJUNCTION, THE, 17, 104, 200
 SYNTAX OF, 363, 8
Conjunctions, Compound, 196
 Co ordinative, 196
 Subordinative, 197, 363
 sometimes omitted, 365
 not truly qualified by adverbs, 177
Conjunctions and Prepositions, distinction between, 200
Conjunctive Adverbs, 179, 191
CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS, 99, 108
Conjunctive Relative, 285 (2)
 omission of, 397-398
Consonants, 5
CONSTRUCTION, FIGURES OF, 485-489
Continuative force of Relatives, 103
Continuous Present, Uses of, 312
 Tenses, 118
 formation of, 311
Co ordinative Conjunctions, 105, 106, 363
Co ordinative Relative, 285 (2)
Copula, 303
Copulative Conjunctions, 106
Correlative Adverbs, 344
Conjunctions, 198, 368
create, 299
Cumulative Sentence, 409
dame, 28 (1) *π*
dare, 160, 365
Dash, the, Use of, 408
Dative Case, 56
 d, *ed*, *-t*, verbal endings, 117
Declension, 56
DEFECTIVE VERBS, 163, 170
Definite Article, 77-70, 261
Definite Article, Use of, 70
 after Adjectives, 271 (2)
 in Titles, 274 (1)
 used for Possessive Pronoun, 265
Definite Numeral Adjectives, 73
Degrees, Adverbs of, 181 (4)
DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES, 76, 81
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, 93, 97
Dependent Sentences, 394
 tense in, 318
 relation to principal, 197
Derivative Words, 7, 419
DERIVATIVES, FORMATION OF, 440, 449
despair, 306
Diphthongs, 6
Direct Narration, 322
Disjunctive Conjunctions, 196
Dissyllables, 8
Distributive Numeral Adjectives, 75, 111

- do, 153, 305
 conjugation of, 163
 emphatic use of, 172, 173
- Double C m ar tives to be avoided, 246
 Superlatives, 69
 feminines, 28 (3)
 Possessive, 240, 277
 Prepositions, 190 (1)
- Doubt how expressed, 317
- down, 202
- Adverbial ending in Old English, 342
- each, 75, 222, 247
 each, every, 111
 each other, 75, 112
- Editorial plural, 280
- either, 75, 202, 217
 either, neither, 111
 either—or, 368
 et, 436, 454 (3)
- elder, 247
- Elliptical Sentences, 402
- else, 202
- Emotion expressed by interjections, 201
- Emphasis, 8, 270, 302 (2)
 on the subject, 230 (8)
 en, 436, 457, 454 (1)
 feminine suffixes, 28 (4)
- en*, *em*, 433, 452
- Enlargements of the Object, 382
- enough, 202
- Epigram Figure of, 481
- er*, 343, 454 (1)
 er and *est* Adjectival endings, 61
 es (gender), 28 (1) (2) and (3)
 et, 436, 454 (3)
- Etymology, 9
- Euphemism, Figure of, 476
- even, 202
- every, 75, 222, 247
- except, 190 (4), 202
- Exclamation, Figure of, 487
- Exclamatory Phrases, 201
 Pronouns, 110
- Fable, The, 479
- Factive Object, 290, 384
 Verbs, 121, 174, 384
- Factive Verbs, impressive voice, 127
- fall, fell, 174, 300
- Feminine Gender, 26
- few a few, 74, 273
- FIGURES OF SPEECH, 461, 489
 Classification of, 462
- first, 202
 fold, 73 (3)
 fond, 306
 for, 202, 352
 with nouns of time, 350
- Foreign Plurals, 48
- former, 247
- former—latter, 251
- French Prefixes, 452
 Suffixes, 453
- from, 352
 with nouns of time, 360
- further and farther, 63, 64
- Future Tenses, 137, 139
- Future Indefinite, 312
 Perfect, 139
 uses of, 312
- Gender, 26, 29
 common, 27
 feminine, formation of, 28
- Geographical names with article, 261
- Gerund, 134, 308
 and Participle, distinction of, 135
- Gerundial Infinitive, 134
 use of, 304
- Government, 205
- governor, 28 (3)
- Grammatical Order, 206
- Greek Prefixes, 457
 Suffixes, 458, 460
- half, 202
 half a half, 273
- have, 155
- her hers, 90, 277
- here, 20, 344
- hinder, 217, 306
- Historic Present, 312
- how, 202, 273 (1)
- Hyperbole, Figure of, 475
- Hyphen, use of, 421
- ier*, 434, 454 (1)
 if, 365
 if then, 368
- Illative Conjunctions, 196
- Imperative Mood defined, 132
 in Indirect speech, 332
- Imperative Sentences, 230
- Imperfect Tenses, 138
 formation of, 311
- Impersonal Absolute, 227
- Impersonal Verbs, 176
- in, 202, 352
 in, 433, 452
- in and at with nouns of place, 54
 with nouns of time, 358
- in order that, 109
- inasmuch as, 199
- Incomplete Perfect, 140
- Incomplete Predication verbs of 120
 case following, 303
- Indefinite Article, 77, 262
 follows some adjs., 274 (1)
 with *few*, *little* etc., 273
- Indefinite Demonstrative Pronouns, 98
- Indefinite Future, 312
- Indefinite Numeral Adjectives, 74
- Indefinite tenses, 138
- Indicative Mood, 130

- Indirect Narration, 322
 change of pronoun in, 328 9
 Indirect Object, 119, 298
 inferior, 247
 Innegative Mood, 133, 304
 as subject, 210
 uses of, 301
 Infinitive position of, 307
 Infinitive of purpose, 134
 Inflection 9, 56
 Inflection of Verbs, 123
 few in number, 152
 ing Verbal termination, 134, 155
 inner, 63, 247
 Intention, how expressed, 317
 INTERJECTION, *THU*, 18, 201, 369
 not properly a part of speech, 201
 in reported speech, 335
 Interrogation, Figure of, 486
 note of, 496
 Interrogative Adverbs 80
 Interrogative form of verbs, 172
 Interrogative subject 302 (1)
proce des verb, 295
 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS 109, 110
 Interrogative sentences, 230, 315
 Analysis of, 389
 Interrogatives, Compound, 110
 Intransitive Verbs 117
 Complements of, 378
 have no object, 128
 made transitive by prepositions, 191
 -ior, Adjectives in, 66
 Irony, Figure of, 482
 Irregular Weak Verbs, 147
 is and be in conditional sentences, 317
 -*is* (adj.), force of, 67
 it, 89, 278
 junior, 247
 later and latter, 61 (2), 247
 Latin and French Prefixes, 452
 Suffixes, 453
 least, 202
 lesser, 246
 lest, 365
 lest that, 199
 let, 305
 Letters—forms of, 3
 lie, lay, 174, 300
 like, 251
 little, a little 71 202 273
 love, Conjugation of 158, 159
 inflections of 151
 -ly, adverbs ending in, 184
 make 299, 305
 many 61 (3) 274 (1)
 Masculine Gender, 26
 Material Nouns, 24, 42, 244
 may, 153, 164 165, 305
 merely, 347
 Metaphor, 466-469
 Metonymy, Figure of, 483
 mis-, 413, 452
 Mixed Metaphors, 470
 Monosyllables, 8
 Mood 129
 more, most, 202
 much, 64 (3), 202
 Multiplicatives, 7 (3)
 must, 166, 305
 my mine, 90, 277
 -n, -en, ne-, endings of Past Participles, 149
 near, 192, 202, 253
 need, 170, 305
 needs, adv., 170, 202
 Negative, inscription of a question, 310
 Negative form of Verbs, 173
 Negative and Interrogative forms combined, 339
 Negative Relative, 107
 neither 202, 210 247
 neither nor, 368
 nether 63, 247
 Newer Gender, 26
 never, 347
 next, 192, 202, 253
 nigh, 192, 253
 no, 71, 202, 222
 Nominative Case, 49
 Absolute, 227, 228
 following verb, 230
 of address, 228 243
 Nominatives of different persons joined by *and*, 223
 none, 71, 247
 nor, 224, 225, 230
 not, Position of, 138
 not only—but also, 344
 Note of Interrogation, Use of, 496
 Note of Exclamation Use of, 497
 NOUN *THU*, 11, 19 57
 Noun in apposition to Sentence, 232
 Noun Clause, The, 396
 Noun Derivatives, 440 2
 Noun Suffixes English, 434 6
 Latin 454
 Greek 458
 Nouns, Compound formation of, 421
 Abstract, 25
 Collective, 23
 Common, 22
 Concrete, 20
 Material, 24
 Proper, 21
 Declension of, 56
 derived from Verbs 428
 in apposition not always same in number, 233
 inflexion of 26 58
 of multitude, 23

- Nouns of *time, space, weight*, possessive
 of, 230
 or pronouns in apposition 231
 plural in sing form, 45
 same form both numbers, 38
 different meanings in different
 numbers, 39
 singular with plural form, 44
 of one number only, 244
 used as adverbs, 18,
 with double meanings in plural 41
 with no singular, 43
 with two plurals, 40
 with plural only, 215
- now, 202
 now—then, 336
 Number, 30 48, 141
 Numeral Adjectives, 72
- Object, The, 380 4
 Cases in which it precedes the
 verb, 302 (1) and (2)
 position of, 302
 enlargements of, 382
 Cognate, 175, 297
 I active, 384
 Indirect, 119, 298 383
- Objective Case, 49
 Objective Complement, 122, 209
 of, after Comparative, 247
 with Possessive, 90, 277
 with Obj used for Possessive, 239
- off, 202
 often, 347
 older and elder, 64 (1)
 on, 352
 one, 202, 262
 one another, 75, 112
 one, none, 96
 one—other, 251
 only, 202 247
 Optative Sentences, 230 (6)
 or, 224, 225, or—or, 368
 or 454, 454 (1)
 Order, 206
 Order of Pronouns, 281
 Order of Numeral Adj's, 72 (2)
 position of, 252
 other, 202, 246
 other—than, 367
 ought, meaning of, 167
 our—ours, 90
 out, 202
 outer, utter, 63, 247
 own, 91, own self, 92
- Parenthesis, mark of, 499
 Parsing Adverbs, 185
 Nouns, 57
 Adjectives 81
 Pronouns, 113
 Verbs, 177
- Parts of Speech, 10 18
- Participle, The, 135, 310 11
 an adj., 310
 used with auxiliaries 311
 as subject, 210
 and Gerund distinction, 135
- Participial Prepositions, 190 (4)
 Passive tenses, formation of, 31
 Passive Voice, 124, 159
 past, 190 (4), 202
 Parable, The, 478
 Parenthetical Sentences, 415
 Past Imperfect, Uses of, 312
 Past Indefinite Uses of, 312
 Past Perfect Tense, 139
 Past Tense 137, 139
 Perfect Tenses, 138
 formation of, 311
 Continuous Tense, 140
 Infinitive, uses of, 304
 Present, uses of, 312
 Progressive, 140
- Period, the Uses of, 495
 Person (verb), 142
 Personal Pronouns 86
 Declension of, 87
 not to be omitted, 276
 Personification, Figure of, 472
 Phrase Conjunctions, 199
 Phrase Prepositions, 190 (1)
 Phrases, Adverbial, 341
 Place, Adverbs of, 181 (1)
 ple 71 (3)
 Pluperfect, 139
 Uses of, 312
- PLURAL, FORMATION OF, 32 37
 Plural forms that are Singular, 215
 Polysyllables 8
 Positive Degree, 60
 Possessive Adjectives, 242, 277
 Possessive Case, 49
 formation of, 50 1
 use of, 235
 two forms of the Personal Pro
 noun, 90
- Possessive Phrases, 52 236
 Possessive Pronouns Use of, 90
 Possessive Relative, 289
 Possessives preceded by *of* 55 240
 Possessives in apposition 234
 posterior, 247
 Potential Mood, 133
- PREDICATE, THE 372, 377
 completion of, 380
 extension of, 385
 simple, 378
- Prefixes, English, 433
 Greek, 457
 Latin and French, 452
- Preparatory Nominative, 278
 PREPOSITIONS, THE, 186 101, 349 352
 Prepositional Verbs, 118, 128, 191, 301 351
 Prepositions, List of, 193
 position of, 186, 350
 in questions, 350

- Prepositions at the end of sentences, 250
 Compound, 425
 govern Objective, 349
 meaning of, 187 9
 not truly qualified by adverbs, 177
 sometimes omitted, 352
 two, with same noun, 353
 used as adverbs, 184
 words and phrases followed by, 361 2
- Present Indefinite Tense Uses of, 312
 Present Infinitive, Use of, 304
 Present Tenses, 137, 139
 prevent, 306
 PRIMARY DERIVATIVES, 470, 477 431
 Primitive Words, 7, 418
 prior, 747
 Progressive Tenses, 138
 PRONOUN, THE, 13, 85-118
 SYNTAX OF, 275 295
 Pronoun representing two nouns, 280
 Pronouns and Adjectives, distinct on, 83
 Pronouns, Conjunctive, 99 108
 Interrogative, 109
 Personal, 86
 Reciprocal, 112
 Relative, 284
 use of, 108
 used as Adverbs, 185
 Proper Adjectives, 60
 with article, 264
 Proper Names, 244
 Proper Nouns, 21, 42
 used as common, 22
 Prosody, 2
 PUNCTUATION, 490-503
- Qualities Names of, 244
 Quality Adverbs of, 181 (1)
 Question and Command combined, 333
 Questions in Indirect Narration, 331
 Questions, *shall* and *will* in, 315
 Quotation Marks, Use of, 401
 quoth, meaning and use of, 168
- rather, 182
 rather—than, 367
 Reciprocal Pronouns, 112
 Reflexive Pronouns, 92
 Regular Weak Verbs, 147
 Relative Adverbs, 179
 Relative or Conjunctive Pronouns, 99, 284
 Relative, Omission of, 292
 position of, 294
 Relative Pronouns as Conjunctions, 194
 use of, 285
 Reply, Case in, same as in Question, 283
 Reported Speech, 322
 Reporting Verb, 322
 tense does not change, 324
 changes in, 334
 RESPONSIVENESS, FIGURES OF, 463 479
 Restrictive Relative, 285 (1)
- Rhetorical Order, 216
 right, 202
 rise—raise, 174, 300
 Roots, 418
 round, 202
 Royal Plural, 280
 to, 435, 454 (2)
- s* -es, *eth*, verbal endings, 143
 said, told, 330
 same—as, 106, 293
 save, 100 (4), 202
 Secondary Derivatives, 420, 437
 see shew, 170
 self added to pronouns, 62
 Semicolon, the, Use of, 493
 senior, 217
 Sentence, The, 114, 105
 Sentences, Analysis of, 371 417
 Sentences, Complex, 391
 Compound, 406
 Cumulative, 409
 Collateral, 409
 Adversative, 410
 Illative, 411
 Alternative, 412
 Contracted, 413
 Mixed, 416
 several, 75
 shall, 305
 shall and will, conjugation of, 156
 use of, 157, 313, 316
 Silent letters, 5
 Simile, Figure of, 465
 following Metaphor, 471
 since, 202, 357, 366
 sit, set, 174, 300
 slight, a slight, 2 3
 so, 202, 274 (1)
 so—as, so—that, 368
 solely, 347
 some, 74 202
 sometimes, 347
 songster, 28 (4)
 spinster, 28 (1) 11
 still, 202
 ster, feminine suffix, 28
 Strong Conjugation, 145, 146, 149
 SUBJECT, 114, 207, 372, 374
 ADJUNCTS TO, 375
 Subject of Verb, Case of, 209
 Subject Conjoint, 413
 Subject, generally omitted in Imperative, 211
 position of, 229 230
 Subjective Complement, 127, 215, 299
 Subjunctive Mood, 131, 317
 Subordinate Clauses, 395, 400 401
 Subordinative Conjunctions, 195, 197 363
 such, 81, 97, 274 (1)
 such—as, 106, 293
 Suffixes denoting action or state, 435
 454 (2)

- Suffixes denoting agent, 434, 454
 denoting diminutives, 436
 English, 434 439
 Latin and French, 453
 Greek, 458
 superior, 247
 Superlative Degree, 60, 70
 use of, 246
 requires definite article, 203
 Synecdochy, Figure of, 484
 Syntax, 203 370

 than, 202, 367
 after Comparative, 247
 that, 100, 202, 397
 (conjunction) omitted, 365
 for *who* or *which*, 286
 the (article), 77, (adverb) 80
 the and of, with gerunds, 309
 their, theirs, 277
 then (adverb and conjunction), 202
 there, 230, 278
 think, 299, 306
 this—that, 81, 90, 250 251
 those, 88, 276
 though, 365
 though—yet, 368
 Tense, 136 140
 Tense inflexion, 160
 Tenses each in three forms, 138
 sequence of, 318, 321
 uses of, 312
 till, 202
 Time, Adverbs of, 181 (2)
 Titles, Singular, 216
 to, 352, 355
 Adjectives followed by, 66
 not essential to infinitive, 305
 told, 330
 too, 202, 275 (1)
 Transferred Epithet, 485
 Transitive Verbs, 117
 used intransitively, 118
 Triphthongs, 6
 Trisyllables, 8
tria, feminine suffix, 28 (4)

un, 433, 452
 Universal Truths, Tense of, 321, 326
 unlike, 253
 until, 365
 up, 202
 upper, 63, 247

 Verb, THE, 14, 114, 176
 SYNTAX OF, 296 340
 Verb Derivatives, 446 448

 Verb Suffixes, English 438
 Latin and French, 456
 Greek, 460
 Verbal Complements, 174
 Verbs both Transitive & Intransitive, 300
 Causative, 174
 derivation of casual, 431
 emphatic form of, 171
 followed by several Subjects, 208
 formed from nouns, 430
 Impersonal, 176
 Inflexions of, 123
 Interrogative form of, 172
 Negative form of, 173
 of *believing* and *making*, &c, 299
 Incomplete, 120, 299
 Intransitive Definition, 117
 Prepositional, 118
 Regular and Irregular, 147
 Transitive, Definition, 117
 with the three parts alike, 150 (11)
 very and too, 68
 very with Adjectives, 68
 vixen, 28 (4)
 Vocative Case, 56, 228, 243
 Voice, 124
 Vowels, 5

 Weak Conjugations, 145, 150, 147
 well, 202, 255 (1)
 were and was, in conditional clauses, 31
 what, 107, 109, 202, 274 (a), 282
 whatever, &c, 110
 whatsoever, 105
 when, where, whence, 108
 whether? 109
 whether—or, 368
 which, use of, 101, 109, 282, 291
 while, 202
 who, Use of, 101, 109, 202
 who—that, 286
 whoever, 105
 why, 202
 will, 202, 305
 use of, 313, 315
with, how expressed, 317
 with, 221, 356
 WORD BUILDING 418 460
 worth (def. verb), 168
 would, Use of, 316
 write, Inflexions of, 152

 y, 435, 454 (2)
 ye 88
 Yes No, in answer, 339
 you, 270
 Dative in Old English, 88
 yon, yonder 81
 your, yours 90 277

